

# Interlingua Grammar

by Alexander Gode & Hugh Blair

1951

Formatted by:

Fuszenecker Róbert [robert.fuszenecker@gmail.com](mailto:robert.fuszenecker@gmail.com)

Copyright, MCMLI, by International Auxiliary Language Association, Inc.  
Copyright, MCMLV, by Science Service, Inc.



---

## Table of Contents

<b>1. Introduction .....</b>	<b>5</b>
1.1. General Principles .....	5
<b>2. Spelling &amp; Pronunciation .....</b>	<b>7</b>
2.1. General .....	7
2.2. Collateral Orthography .....	10
2.3. Punctuation .....	11
<b>3. Parts of Speech .....</b>	<b>13</b>
3.1. Article .....	13
3.2. Noun .....	15
3.3. Adjective .....	18
3.4. Adverb .....	25
3.5. Pronouns .....	29
3.6. Verb .....	39
3.7. Numerals .....	54
<b>4. Grammatical Words .....</b>	<b>65</b>
4.1. A - D .....	66
4.2. E - H .....	67
4.3. I - L .....	68
4.4. M - P .....	69
4.5. Q - T .....	71
4.6. U - Z .....	73
<b>5. Word Building .....</b>	<b>75</b>
5.1. Nouns derived from nouns .....	77
5.2. Adjectives derived from nouns .....	82
5.3. Verbs derived from nouns and adjectives .....	84
5.4. Words derived from adjectives .....	85
5.5. Words derived from verbs .....	87
5.6. Compounding by means of prefixes - general .....	96
5.7. Compounding by means of prefixes - technical .....	103
5.8. Compounding by means of compounding forms .....	106
5.9. Compounding Derivation .....	112
<b>6. Appendix 1 .....</b>	<b>116</b>
6.1. Double-Stem Verbs .....	116
<b>7. Appendix 2 - English-Interlingua Word List .....</b>	<b>121</b>
7.1. A - D .....	121
7.2. E - H .....	127
7.3. I - L .....	132
7.4. M - P .....	134
7.5. Q - T .....	138
7.6. U - Z .....	144

---

<b>8. Appendix 3 - sample texts .....</b>	<b>147</b>
8.1. Colonisation del Nove Anglaterra .....	147
8.2. Le ordine .....	149
8.3. Visita al mercato .....	152
8.4. Energia .....	153
8.5. Le administration de recercas scientific .....	155
<b>9. Alphabetical Index .....</b>	<b>159</b>

# 1. Introduction

## 1.1. General Principles

"Vocabulary" and "grammar" are not hermetically sealed-off categories. If grammar describes the structure of a language, it goes without saying that no such description can be offered without constant reference to word material illustrative of various structural features. But it is also true that there can be no dictionary of words presented as amorphous raw material. Lexical listings are necessarily possessed of structure, and the structure of words and phrases is a matter of grammar.

These observations are not to suggest that the distinction between vocabulary and grammar might be abandoned, nor even that their treatment under separate heads is exclusively a matter of practical convenience. They are merely to restate the fact that the vocabulary and the grammar of a particular language are interdependent as naturally and necessarily compatible aspects of one and the same phenomenon. Beyond this they may raise the question as to what special characteristics distinguish the relationship of vocabulary and grammar in the case of a planned interlingua.

The basic character of any language is largely determined by features of a structural, i.e., a grammatical nature. Let the dictionary of a language be invaded by hordes of foreign words, as long as its patterns of word and sentence structure stay intact, the foreign material will eventually be assimilated and the basic character of the language will survive essentially unchanged.

This principle, applicable to all languages, is strikingly illustrated by English with its very considerable Romance vocabulary assimilated to a Teutonic base.

There is no apparent reason that planned auxiliary languages should be governed by fundamentally different laws. Yet superficially their situation does look completely reversed. There has been ample opportunity to observe that once agreement on the best possible vocabulary for an auxiliary language is assured, diversities of opinion in regard to grammatical problems lead to nothing more than parallel variants of one general language. But this is not so because the grammatical structure of planned languages is less significant than that of natural languages; it is so because an established vocabulary implies the settlement of so many questions of structure, i.e., of grammar, that the remaining grammatical features play of necessity a subordinate and dependent role.

It is, then, only a seeming reversal of the principle of grammar's precedence over vocabulary that after the vocabulary of a planned auxiliary language has been determined all that remains to be said by way of grammar must be completely subordinated to the structural characteristics of the vocabulary. The grammatical structure of a planned

## 1. Introduction

---

language determines its basic character precisely as does the structure of a natural language. But the determination of the vocabulary leaves few grammatical questions wholly indeterminate.

The vocabulary of IALA's form of the interlingua is that embodied in the Interlingua-English Dictionary. The fundamental principle of the corresponding grammar must be that this grammar shall be the minimum or simplest possible system fit to govern the use of the chosen vocabulary in coherent speech.

IALA's endeavor to compile a dictionary of generally international words led of necessity to the assembly of a basically Romance vocabulary. The source languages to whose domain search and research could safely be restricted were Spanish and Portuguese, Italian, French, and English, with German and Russian as possible substitutes.<sup>1</sup>

Hence a sound working principle in the elaboration of IALA's system of grammar is that the term "minimum grammar" shall not permit the suppression of any grammatical feature which according to the testimony of the source languages is indispensable in the government of their vocabularies and hence of the vocabulary of the interlingua embodied in the Interlingua-English Dictionary. In other words, every grammatical feature which is encountered in all the source languages shall be retained in the grammar of the interlingua, or negatively, no grammatical feature shall be so retained if it is missing from as much as one of the source languages. Thus, for instance, the feature of a distinctive plural form of nouns must be retained because it is found to exist in all the source languages while the feature of grammatical gender can be dispensed with because it is missing in one of the source languages, i.e., in English.

The determination of what grammatical features are to be retained in the interlingua leaves open the question of the forms which are to be used to represent them. The forms of grammatical features are determined as far as possible by means of the method worked out for the "standardization" of forms of words as analyzed in the Introduction to the Interlingua-English Dictionary.

If the material of the following grammar appears to be organized in a somewhat unorthodox way, the reason is simply that certain chapters ordinarily represented in conventional grammars could be omitted in the present instance because their subject matter is completely covered by the Dictionary. Thus the grammar contains, for example, no special discussion of prepositions and conjunctions except for a paragraph under the heading of word building. It will also be noted that there is no section concerned with problems of syntax. Such problems do exist in Interlingua, but it seemed expedient to treat them in connection with the various parts of speech whose functions in the sentence can be made to involve all syntactic questions of practical import. The technical apparatus of the Dictionary (list of abbreviations, etc.) applies to the Grammar as well and has not been included again in the following pages.

<sup>1</sup> For further details, see Interlingua-English Dictionary, "Introduction."

## 2. Spelling & Pronunciation

### 2.1. General

#### §1

The LETTERS used are the conventional twenty-six letters of the Roman alphabet. There are no extra signs and symbols to indicate stress and pronunciation.

#### §2

The NORM OF PRONUNCIATION is "continental." The sound values of the various letters are fluid within type limits. They may be naturally influenced by neighboring sounds as also by native habits of individual speakers. For instance, the sound of *u* - described in the phrase, "like *u* in 'plural' " - may well be pronounced like *oo* in 'good' or in 'loom' but not like *u* in 'stutter' or in French 'lune.'

#### §3

The tendency of English speakers to obscure unstressed vowels, making them all sound like *a* in 'China,' should be guarded against. This applies particularly to final *e*. No sound, final or otherwise, unstressed or stressed, should be unduly slurred over.

#### §4

The normal English pronunciation agrees with that used in the Interlingua for the letters *b*, *d*, *f*, *k*, *l*, *m*, *n*, *p*, *ph*, *qu*, *v*, *w*, and *z*. The remaining letters are covered by the following rules and observations:

- a  
is always pronounced like *a* in English 'father';
- c  
before *e*, *i*, *y* is pronounced like *ts* in 'hats' (or, optionally, like *c* in 'city'); otherwise like *c* in 'cats'; *ch* like *ch* in 'echo', 'chrome';
- e  
always like *e* in 'met' or, better, like *é* in French 'risqué'
- g  
like *g* in 'good';
- h  
as in English (or, optionally, silent); after *r* and *t*, silent;
- i

## 2. Spelling & Pronunciation

---

	normally like <i>i</i> in 'machine'; when unstressed before a vowel, like <i>i</i> in 'onion' or in 'phobia'); e.g. <i>bile</i> , <i>biliose</i> , <i>varie</i> ;
j	like <i>z</i> in 'azure' (or, optionally, like <i>g</i> in 'gem' or like <i>y</i> in 'yes');
o	always like <i>o</i> in 'obey';
r	like <i>rr</i> in 'merry' or, better, like <i>r</i> in Spanish 'caro';
s	like <i>s</i> in 'stay'; between vowels, the same (or, optionally, like <i>s</i> in 'these'); e.g. <i>sparse</i> , <i>abstruse</i> , <i>accusativo</i> ;
t	as in English; <i>ti</i> before vowels, unless stressed or preceded by <i>s</i> , like <i>tsy</i> in 'he gets you' (or, optionally, like <i>sy</i> in 'we pass you' or like <i>ty</i> in 'we let you'); e.g. <i>actor</i> , <i>garantia</i> , <i>question</i> , but <i>action</i> , <i>reverentia</i> ;
u	normally like <i>u</i> in 'plural'; when unstressed before a vowel, like <i>u</i> in 'persuade' or in 'superfluous'; e.g. <i>plural</i> , <i>persuader</i> , <i>superflue</i> ;
x	like <i>x</i> in 'fox'; between vowels, the same (or, optionally, like <i>x</i> in 'exact');
y	unstressed before vowels, like <i>y</i> in 'yes'; otherwise like <i>i</i> in 'machine'; e.g. <i>Yugoslavia</i> , <i>typo</i> .

### §5

In DIPHTHONGS the vowels retain their independent sound values. The diphthong *ai* is pronounced as in 'kaiser,' *au* as in 'kraut.' Stressed *e* and *i* are separated by a syllabic break from a following *a*, *e*, *o*; e.g. *mie*, *io*, *spondeo*, *via*, *bastardia*. Unstressed *i* and *u* turn into semiconsonants before a following vowel; e.g. *Bulgaria*, *filatorio*, *persuader*.

### §6

DOUBLE CONSONANTS merge in pronunciation. The double consonant *ss* is always voiceless like *ss* in 'miss.' The sounds of *g* and *k* assimilate a preceding *n* as in English. Note that the double consonant *cc* is spelled *c* at the end of a word (*siccar* but *sic*).

### §7

Pronunciations deviating from these norms are indicated in the Interlingua-English Dictionary by a system of respelling in which the letters have the same sound values as in Interlingua. The digraph *ch* stands frequently for the sound of *sh* in 'English' and is respelled as *sh*; e.g. *choc* (*sh-*). The combination *gi* often represents the sound of *z* in 'azure' and is respelled as *j*; e.g. *avantagiose* (*-aje-*). Simple *g* has this sound and hence this respelling in the suffix *-age*; e.g. *avantage* (*-aje*).



## §8

On orthographic changes in derivation, see [§137](#).

## §9

Unassimilated "GUEST WORDS," that is, foreign or borrowed words which are identified in the Interlingua-English Dictionary as to their origin, retain the pronunciation and spelling of the language of origin. The original diacritical signs are omitted when the resulting simplified spelling suffices to suggest the intended pronunciation; e.g. *defaite* for French *défaite*, but *kümmel* as in German.

## §10

The main STRESS is normally on the vowel before the last consonant. The plural ending does not change the original stress of the word. Adjectives and nouns ending in *-le*, *-ne*, and *-re* preceded by a vowel have the stress on the third syllable from the end; e.g. *fragile*, *ordine*, *tempore*. In words formed with the suffixes *-ic*, *-ica*, *-ico*, *-ide*, *-ido*, *-ula*, and *-ulo*, the stress falls on the syllable preceding the suffix. The suffixes *-ific* and *-ifico* are stressed on the first *i*.

Deviations from this stress system are covered in the Interlingua-English Dictionary by respelling with stress marks. Most of these deviations might be covered by additional descriptive rules. For instance, the suffixes *-issim-*, *-esim-*, *-ifer-*, and *-olog-* are stressed on the first vowel. The suffixes *-ia* and *-eria*, in so far as they correspond to English *-y* and *-ery*, are stressed on the vowel *i*; etc.

Note: Words without consonant or without a vowel before the last consonant are stressed of necessity on the first vowel; e.g. *io*, *via*, and certain present-tense forms, as *strue*, *crea*, etc. But *construe*, *procrea*, etc. and also *diminue*, *substitue*, etc. follow the standard rule and have the stress on the vowel before the last consonant.

## §11

The importance of stress regularity should not be exaggerated. The effort involved in acquiring an unfamiliar stress for an otherwise familiar word seems often inordinate. This does not, of course, imply that Interlingua words may be stressed completely at random but merely that a word like *kilometro* remains the same international word whether native habits cause a speaker to stress it on the second or on the third syllable.

## §12

Native habits may likewise be allowed to prevail in questions of INTONATION, SOUND DURATION, and the like. It is suggested, however, that the sequence of a final and an initial vowel, both unstressed and not separated by a pause in intonation, be pronounced as a combined glide; e.g. *le alte Ural* almost as though it had the four syllables *le-ál-teu-rál*.

## 2. Spelling & Pronunciation

---

### §13

SYLLABIFICATION follows pronunciation. Single consonants, except *x*, belong with the following syllable. Consonant groups are divided but *l* and *r* must not be separated from preceding *b*, *c*, *ch*, *d*, *f*, *g*, *p*, *ph*, *t*, *th*, and *v*. The combinations *qu*, *gu*, *su* behave like single consonants.

### §14

CAPITALIZATION differs from English usage in that within the sentence upper-case initials occur exclusively with proper names but not with derivatives from them.

*In Francia le franceses parla francese ab le initio de lor vita*  
'In France the French talk French from the start of their lives'

*Le piscatores del Mar Morte cape haringos salate*  
'The fishermen on the Dead Sea catch salt herrings'

*Le ver stilo shakespearean se trova solmente in Shakespeare*  
'The true Shakespearean style is found only in Shakespeare'

Since sacred terms, the names of religious and other holidays, designations of movements, eras, doctrines, etc. may be considered proper or common names, they are capitalized or not, depending on the meaning intended.

*Le romanticismo de Hollywood es subinde insipide*  
'The romanticism of Hollywood is often insipid'

*Le philosophia del Romanticismo cerca le reunion de scientia e religion*  
'The philosophy of Romanticism seeks the reunion of science and religion'

## 2.2. Collateral Orthography

### §15

COLLATERAL ORTHOGRAPHY. - The following rules, not observed in the Interlingua-English Dictionary, yield a simplified system of equal standing with that outlined in the preceding paragraphs. All points not specifically covered below are to be kept unchanged; so for instance the treatment of unassimilated guest words whose orthography remains that used in the Interlingua-English Dictionary.

- A. Double letters representing a single consonant are simplified with the exception of *ss*. Note that the group *cc* before *e*, *i*, and *y* does not represent a single consonant. e.g. *eclesia*, *aliterar*, *aducer*, *interogar* (for *ecclesia*, *alliterar*, *adducer*, *interrogar*) but *massa*, *transsubstantiation*, *accidente*.
- B. The vowel *y* is replaced by *i*; e.g. *tirano* (for *tyranno*). The semi-consonant *y* remains unchanged; e.g. *yak*.

- C. The digraph *ph* is replaced by *f*; e.g. *fonetic, emfatic* (for *phonetic, emphatic*).
- D. The digraph *ch*, representing the sound of *k*, is kept only before *e* and *i*. Elsewhere it is replaced by *c*. e.g. *cloric, Cristo* (for *chloric, Christo*) but *chimeric*.
- E. The silent *h* after *r* and *t* is omitted; e.g. *retoric, patetic* (for *rhetoric, pathetic*).
- F. The letter *j* replaces *g* and *gi* to represent the sound of 'z' in 'azure.' e.g. *sajo* (for *sagio*).
- G. The suffix *-age* (also the sound group *-age* at the end of a word where it is not a suffix) is replaced by the form *-aje*; e.g. *saje, coraje* (for *sage, corage*). The suffix *-isar* is replaced by the form *-izar*. Its derivatives are likewise spelled with *z*. e.g. *civilizar, civilization* (for *civilisar, civilisation*).
- H. Final *e* is dropped after *t* preceded by a vowel except in words which have the stress on the third syllable from the end; e.g. *animat, brevitat* (for *animate, brevitate*) but *composite*. This rule applies likewise to final *e* after *n*, *l*, and *r* when these consonants are the collateral spelling for *nn*, *ll*, and *rr*; e.g. *peren, bel, mel, il, bizar* (for *perenne, belle, melle, ille, bizarre*). Note: Present-tense and imperative forms are not affected by this rule; *pote, permite*, etc. retain their final *-e*.

### 2.3. Punctuation

#### §16

PUNCTUATION reflects the rhythm of the spoken sentence and obeys no absolute rules. The signs of punctuation and their general values are the same as in English. Interpolated phrases and relative and conjunctive clauses are enclosed in commas unless the intended rhythm permits no break. In enumerations of more than two items, the use of *e*'and' or *o*'or' before the last item does not eliminate the comma.

*Le homine que vos vide es mi patre*  
'The man you see is my father'

*Le homine, que se considera como le corona del creation, pare plus tosto facite de metallo  
blanc que de auro*  
'Man, who considers himself the crown of creation, seems rather to be made of babbitt than  
of gold'

*Le asino, le can, e le catto formava un pedestal pro le gallo*  
'The donkey, the dog, and the cat formed a pedestal for the rooster'

*Es isto le canto del asino, del can, del catto, o del gallo?*  
'Is this the song of the donkey, the dog, the cat, or the rooster?'

*Le Statos Unite, Anglaterra e su imperio, e Russia es tres del grande potentias*  
'The United States, England and its empire, and Russia are three of the great powers'

*Ille es, pro exprimer lo corteseamente, pouco intelligente*  
'He is, to put it politely, not very intelligent'



## 3. Parts of Speech

### 3.1. Article

#### §17

The DEFINITE ARTICLE is *le* 'the.' It shows no agreement in form with the following noun. A preceding preposition *a* or *de* fuses with the article *le* in the forms *al* and *del*.

*le patre* 'the father'

*le matre* 'the mother'

*le infante* 'the child'

*le patres* 'the fathers'

*del patre al matre* 'from the father to the mother'

*le matre del infantes* 'the mother of the children'

#### §18

The definite article is used on the whole as in English.

'I like children' *Io ama infantes*

'I like the children' *Io ama le infantes*

'Where can I find flowers?' *Ubi pote io trovar flores?*

'Where can I find the flowers?' *Ubi pote io trovar le flores?*

The definite article need not be omitted with titles preceding proper names, except in direct address. It must not be omitted with abstract nouns representing the entire class, species, etc.

'Professor and Mrs. Somebody'

*le professor e le seniora Alicuno*

'Give me liberty or give me death'

*Da me le libertate o le morte*

'I am happy to see you, Dr. Somebody'

*Io es felice de vider vos, doctor Alicuno*

'She adores man and beast'

*Illa adora le homine e le animal*

### 3. Parts of Speech

---

#### §19

The INDEFINITE ARTICLE is *un* 'a' or 'an.' Like the definite article it shows no agreement in form with the following noun. It is identical with the numeral *un* 'one.'

*un patre* 'a father, one father'

*un matre* 'a mother, one mother'

*un infante* 'a child, one child'

*un vacca* 'a cow, one cow'

#### §20

The indefinite article is used as in English.

#### §21

Both the DEFINITE and the INDEFINITE ARTICLES share with adjectives the possibility of pronominal use. See [§38-§41](#).

*mi amico e le de mi fratre*

'my friend and the [friend] of my brother'

*mi fratre e un de mi amicos*

'my brother and one of my friends'

*Io parla duo linguas; un al domo, un altere al officina; le un es francese, le altere anglese*

'I speak two languages; one at home, another at the shop; the one is French, the other English'

*Io parla duo linguas; le de mi familia e le de mi ambiente*

'I speak two languages; that of my family and that of my environment'

When used as pronouns, the articles can take the plural forms *les* and *unes*. The latter is often to be rendered as 'some.'

*le opinionones de mi patre e les de mi matre*

'the views of my father and those of my mother'

*Nostre amicos veni: les de mi fratre, un de mi soror, e unes del amicos de nostre parentes*

'Our friends are coming: those of my brother, one of my sister's, and some of the friends of our parents'

In pronominal use the articles are capable of making a distinction between male and female antecedents, *le* and *la*, *uno* and *una*, all of which have in turn plural forms. The distinction need not be observed when the context is clear without it.

*Mi fratre e mi soror invita lor melior amicos; le de mi fratre ama la de mi soror*  
 'My brother and sister invite their best friends; my brother's [best friend] loves my sister's [best friend]'

*Mi fratre e mi soror ha multe amicos. Uno de mi fratre ama una de mi soror*  
 'My brother and my sister have many friends. One of my brother's [friends] loves one of my sister's [friends]'

*mi amicos, unos de mi fratre, e las de mi soror*  
 'my friends, some of my brother's [boy friends], and the girl friends of my sister'

Note that the definite article in pronominal use has the male form *le*, the female form *la*, with characteristic final vowels appearing again with certain pronouns (see §54, §58, §78) while the indefinite article in pronominal use has the male-female distinction *uno-una* with final vowels to be encountered with nouns (see §24).

The definite article has a neuter pronominal form *lo* which occurs especially in the phrase *lo que* 'that which, what.' Its plural, rarely needed, is of course *los*.

*lo que io pensa*  
 'what I think'

*Io non sape lo que ille pensa*  
 'I don't know what he thinks'

### 3.2. Noun

#### §22

As in English, nouns cannot be identified by a constant and specific feature of their forms. The great majority of nouns end in one of the vowels *a, o, e*, or the consonants *l, n, r*. But these terminations occur with other words too. There are, again as in English, a number of suffixes which occur only with nouns. Otherwise nouns are recognized by the function they perform in a sentence.

#### §23

There is no GRAMMATICAL GENDER. The terminations of nouns have no grammatical value and may be considered accidental.

*tabula* 'table'  
*pagina* 'page'  
*homine* 'man, human being'  
*tempore* 'time'  
*uso* 'use'  
*fructo* 'fruit'  
*uxor* 'wife'

### 3. Parts of Speech

---

*fun* 'rope'  
*galon* 'braid, galloon'  
*libertate* 'liberty'  
*generation* 'generation'  
*gas* 'gas'  
*roc* 'rook, castle'

#### §24

When the termination *o* occurs - as it frequently does - in a word designating a MALE being, the corresponding FEMALE can be represented by the same word with the substituted ending *a*. The rule works also in reverse order.

*asino* 'donkey'; hence: *asina* 'female donkey'  
*missionario* 'missionary'; hence: *missionaria* 'woman missionary'  
*americano* 'American'; hence: *americana* 'American (girl or woman)'  
*oca* 'goose'; hence: *oco* 'gander'  
*ciconia* 'stork'; hence: *ciconio* '(male) stork'

*Note:* The inference that a word like *musca* 'fly' would permit the use of the male form *musco* is as justified and also as incongruous as the suggestion that English can form the word 'he-fly.' On the formation of female nouns by means of the suffixes *-essa* and *-trice*, see [§138](#), [§152](#)

#### §25

The PLURAL is formed by the addition of *s* or *-* after a consonant - of *es*. Final *c* changes before *es* to *ch*.

*tabulas, paginas, homines, tempores, usos, fructos, uxores, aeres, funes, galones, libertates, generationes, gases, roches*

Irregular plurals occur only in "guest words" which have retained their foreign identity.

*le test*: *le tests* [English]  
*le lied*: *le lieder* [German]  
*le addendum*: *le addenda* [Neo-Latin]  
*le*: *Abruzzi* [Italian]

Learned terms ending in *-is* form their plural as though the singular had a final *-e*: *genesis* (or *genese*) > *geneses*; *hepatitis* > *hepatites*.

Singular compounds with second elements in the plural have no distinct plural.

*un guardacostas*: *duo guardacostas* (coastguard)  
*un rumpenuces*: *duo rumpenuces* (nutcracker)  
*un paracolpos*: *duo paracolpos* (bumper)



## §26

There are no CASE FORMS. The functions of the genitive and dative in other languages are taken over by prepositions.

*de Deo* 'God's, of God'

*a Deo* 'God, to God'

*Ille in via flores a su matre* 'He sends his mother flowers, He sends flowers to his mother'

*Ilia recipit le flores de su filio* 'She receives her son's flowers'

*Nos paga taxat al governmento* 'We pay the government tax money, We pay tax money to the government'

*le debitas del governmento* 'the government's debts, the debts of the government'

## §27

On the formation of nouns as well as of derivatives from them, see [§138](#), [§139](#), [§140](#), [§141](#), [§152](#), [§154](#).

## §28

The way nouns are used in the sentence does not differ materially from English norms. Note, however, that the almost unlimited use of NOUNS WITH ADJECTIVAL FUNCTIONS is an English trait not shared by Interlingua.

'winter weather' (= wintry weather, weather of winter) *tempore hibernal, tempore de hiberno*

'research laboratory' (= laboratory of research) *laboratorio de recerca*

'fall coat' (= coat of fall, coat for fall) *mantello de autumnno, mantello pro autumnno*

'night watchman' (= watchman of night) *guarda de nocte*

'milk bottle' (= bottle of milk, bottle for milk) *bottilia de lacte, bottilia a lacte*

'night song' (= song of night, nocturnal song) *canto de nocte, canto nocturne*

## §29

PROPER NOUNS functioning in English as adjectives - as e.g. in 'Diesel engine,' 'Geiger counter,' etc. - remain unmodified proper nouns in the Interlingua and are preceded by the noun they qualify in English. The pattern used is that followed in English in the case of titles: Doctor Diesel, Professor Diesel, engine Diesel; etc. The proper names take no plural -s.

'Geiger counter(s)' *contator Geiger, contatores Geiger*

'Diesel engine(s)' *motor Diesel, motores Diesel*

'Roentgen rays' *radios Röntgen*

'Heaviside layer' *strato Heaviside*

### 3. Parts of Speech

---

#### §30

There is a very free use of APPOSITION with one member often corresponding to an English noun with adjectival functions.

*foresta virgine* 'virgin forest'  
*arbore nano* 'dwarf tree'  
*wagon restaurante* 'dining car'  
*nave domo* 'house boat'  
*homine machina* 'human machine'

The use of apposition is very frequent with nouns of agents and the like which thus become indistinguishable from adjectives.

*mi amico mazdaista* 'my Mazdaist friend'  
*apparato generator* 'generating device'  
*uxor puera* 'child wife'

In the plural the appositive may take an -s. Without it the appositive is more clearly adjectival. One would say: *uxores pueras* but *apparatos generator*, *forestas virgine*, etc.

When the appositive has distinct forms for male and female, their use is governed by the fact of sex.

*mi amico cantator e mi amica cantatrice*  
'my singer friend (masc.) and my singer friend (fem.)'

### 3.3. Adjective

#### §31

Adjectives end in a vowel or a consonant. The former group ends almost without exception in *e*, the latter in one of the consonants *l*, *n*, *r*, *c*. Since other words can have the same endings, these do not identify adjectives, which can only be spotted by the function they perform in a sentence or at times by a suffix which happens to occur with no other part of speech.

*delicate* 'delicate'  
*american* 'American'  
*parve* 'small'  
*dan* 'Danish'  
*blau* 'blue'  
*par* 'even'  
*equal* 'equal'  
*cyclic* 'cyclic'

## §32

There is no adjectival INFLECTION or AGREEMENT.

*Le parve femina es belle* 'The little woman is beautiful'  
*(Le) parve feminas es belle* '(The) little women are beautiful'  
*(Le) parve homines es belle* '(The) little men are handsome'  
*Le parve libro es belle* 'The little book is beautiful'

## §33

Adjectives placed next to a noun can either PRECEDE OR FOLLOW. The latter position is more frequent and hence normal. Adjectives preceding a noun tend to suggest that what they express is an essential feature of the noun concept and not merely a feature distinguishing the present representative of the noun concept from others.

*le lingua international e le linguas national*  
 'the international language and the national languages'

*Su integre vita esseva ric in viages longe e breve*  
 'His whole life was rich in long and short trips'

Long adjectives should rarely be allowed to precede a noun. Brief adjectives like *bon*, *alte*, *parve*, *grande*, *belle*, *breve*, *longe*, etc., may precede merely for rhythm's sake or as a matter of personal preference. The two possible positions of the adjective cannot ever express two distinct meanings. Numeral adjectives (cardinals as well as ordinals) precede the noun they qualify.

## §34

Degrees of COMPARISON are expressed by means of the adverbs *plus* and *minus*.

*bon: plus bon: le plus bon* 'good: better: best'  
*bon: minus bon: le minus bon* 'good less good: least good'  
*interessante: plus interessante: le plus interessante* (interesting)  
*interessante: minus interessante: le minus interessante*

When the comparative happens to be preceded by the definite article, it coincides with the superlative. The examples below (§35) show that this involves no confusion.

## §35

Comparison of equality is expressed by *tanto . . . como* or *si . . . como* 'as . . . as'. The particle after the comparative is *que* 'than.'

Comparative and superlative forms following the noun repeat the preceding definite article - provided there is one.

### 3. Parts of Speech

---

*Un homine es tanto bon como un altere e frequentemente etiam un grande portion plus bon*  
'One man is as good as another and frequently even a great deal better'

*Iste historia es le minus interessante que io ha legite*  
'This story is the least interesting (which) I have read'

*Iste historia es le minus interessante del duo*  
'This story is the less interesting of the two'

*Del duo summas paga le plus parve*  
'Of the two amounts pay the lesser'

*Chesterlucks es plus blande*  
'Chesterlucks are milder'

*Le presidente del committee ajorna omne le questiones le plus urgente*  
'The committee chairman postpones all the most urgent questions'

*Illa ha le plus dulce temperamento e le ideas le plus naive*  
'She has the sweetest disposition and the most naive ideas'

#### §36

The idea of the so-called ABSOLUTE SUPERLATIVE may be expressed as in English by various constructions: most interesting, very interesting, extremely interesting, terribly interesting, etc. A device used specifically for purposes of the absolute superlative is the suffix *-issime*.

*Su replica esseva un "non" multo emphatic*  
'His reply was a very emphatic "no"'

*Su replica esseva un emphaticissime "non"*  
'His reply was a most emphatic "no"'

*Ille parla in un maniera terribilmente interessante*  
'He talks in a terribly interesting fashion'

#### §37

The particles *plus* and *minus*, which are used to express degrees of comparison, are themselves expressive of the comparative degree of adverbs which admit no regular forms of comparison. See [§44](#) below. Similarly there are in the Interlingua vocabulary a few adjectives which one may wish to regard as irregular synonyms of certain comparative and superlative forms.

*parve* : *plus parve* : *le plus parve* or *minor* : *le minor* or *minime*  
'small: smaller or lesser: smallest or least'

*magne: plus magne: le plus magne or major: le major or maxime*  
'great: greater: greatest'

*bon: plus bon: le plus bon or melior: le melior or optime*  
'good: better: best'

*mal: plus mal: le plus mal or pejor: le pejor or pessime*  
'bad: worse: worst'

### §38

Theoretically EVERY ADJECTIVE CAN SERVE AS A PRONOUN. The noun it represents may either be one expressed in the preceding passage or it may be a more or less definite notion in the mind of the speaker.

*Le puero ha un conilio mascule e duo conilias. Le mascule pare assatis grasse pro esser edite*  
'The boy has one male rabbit and two she-rabbits. The male (one) seems fat enough to be eaten'

*A causa de su eterne mal humor nos appella le "le acre"*  
'Because of his eternal bad humor we call him "the acrid (one)'"

In the first example, 'the male' stands for 'the male rabbit'; in the second example, 'the acrid one' suggests a male human being but not a specific noun like 'man, boy, teacher, etc.' In instances of the latter kind it may be preferable to speak of "adjectives used as nouns" or "substantivized adjectives" rather than of "adjectives used as pronouns." Adjectives used as nouns include also abstracts of the type 'the good, the true, the beautiful' in the sense of 'goodness, truth, beauty.'

### §39

Adjectives used as pronouns or nouns behave grammatically like ordinary nouns and can be pluralized.

*Le puero ha quatro conilios, duo masculas e duo femininas*  
'The boy has four rabbits, two male and two female ones'

*A causa de lor eterne mal humor nos appella les "le acres"*  
'Because of their eternal bad humor we call them "the acrid (ones)'"

### §40

Numerous adjectives listed in the Interlingua-English Dictionary correspond to parallel noun entries.

### 3. Parts of Speech

---

Adjectives	Nouns
<i>bon</i> 'good'	<i>bono</i> 'good (as "the good and the beautiful"); good one (= good man); certificate, coupon'
<i>auguste</i> 'august'	<i>augusto</i> '(the) august (one); (month) of August' <i>Augusto</i> 'August, Augustus' <i>Augusta</i> 'Augusta'
<i>characteristic</i> 'characteristic'	<i>characteristica</i> 'characteristic (trait)'
<i>chromatic</i> 'chromatic'	<i>chromatica</i> 'chromatics'
<i>indonesian</i> 'Indonesian'	<i>indonesiano</i> 'Indonesian'
<i>natural</i> 'natural'	<i>natural</i> 'disposition, temperament'
<i>provincial</i> 'provincial'	<i>provincial</i> 'provincial'
<i>technic</i> 'technical'	<i>tecnico</i> 'technician' <i>tecnica</i> 'technique; technology'
<i>automobile</i> 'self-moving'	<i>automobile</i> 'automobile'
<i>ambiente</i> 'ambient, surrounding'	<i>ambiente</i> 'environment'
<i>alte</i> 'high'	<i>alto</i> 'top; alto'
<i>belligerente</i> 'belligerent'	<i>belligerente</i> 'belligerent'
<i>comestibile</i> 'edible'	<i>comestibiles</i> 'food'
<i>combustibile</i> 'combustible'	<i>combustibile</i> 'fuel'
<i>composite</i> 'composite'	<i>composito</i> 'compound'

The possibility of thus turning adjectives into nouns is limited by nothing but common sense. Unless otherwise crystallized by usage, an adjective used as a full-fledged noun (not simply as a pronoun for a noun previously mentioned) expresses either the abstract notion of the quality represented by the adjective - e.g. the good, the beautiful, the sublime - or a thing or person characterized by what the adjective expresses - e.g. the dear, the beloved, the former, the wounded. When they express an abstract quality and when they represent a male being, adjectives turned into nouns either assume the vowel ending *o* or remain unchanged; when they represent female beings they assume the vowel ending *a* or remain unchanged.

The switch to the vowel endings *o* and *a* under the conditions stated is the norm. The adjectives which do not follow that norm are listed below in §41. It should be noted, however, (a) that the list is exhaustive and hence includes a good many items for which the distinction of male and female has no practical significance, and (b) that the list is a "purists' list" so that the mistaken use of the endings *o* and *a* with its items cannot be considered a serious matter.

#### §41

Adjectives which cannot, when used as nouns, assume distinct forms in *o* and *a* although - sense permitting - they are capable of assuming the plural ending, include the following:

- A. all adjectives which end in *-ce* and *-u*; e.g. *rapace, precoce, dulce, hindu, manchu, blau*, etc.;
- B. all adjectives whose apparent stem is followed by *-e(n)se, -il(e), -ior, -nte* whether or not these endings are clearly recognizable as suffixes; e.g. *futile, junior, consciente, clemente, francese*, etc.;
- C. all adjectives ending in the suffixes *-al, -ar, -bile, -oide, -plice*; e.g. *natural, linear, amabile, negroide, duplice*, etc.
- D. the adjectives  
*agreste* 'rustic'  
*alacre* 'eager'  
*breve* 'short'  
*celebre* 'famous'  
*celere* 'quick'  
*celibe* 'unmarried'  
*cruel* 'cruel'  
*fidel* 'faithful'  
*folle* 'bellows'  
*forte* 'mad'  
*grande* 'big'  
*grave* 'heavy'  
*juvene* 'young'  
*leve* 'light'  
*mediocre* 'mediocre'  
*memore* 'mindful'  
*minor* 'lesser'  
*molle* 'soft'  
*necesse* 'necessary'  
*omne* 'all'  
*par* 'even'  
*plure* 'several'  
*prode* 'valiant'  
*pubere* 'pubescent'  
*qual* 'which'  
*quite* 'quit'  
*solemne* 'solemn'  
*suave* 'sweet'  
*tal* 'such'  
*tenue* 'thin'  
*triste* 'sad'  
*ubere* 'fruitful'  
*verde* 'green'  
*vetere* 'old'
- E. all adjectives derived from those listed above by prefixes; e.g. *supernatural, infidel*, etc.;
- F. the geographical and racial name adjectives  
*caribe*  
*ethiope*  
*ligure*

### 3. Parts of Speech

---

*macedone*

*mongol*

*moslem*

*nomade*

*saxone*

*turcoman*

G. indeclinable grammatical adjectives like *cata*, *que*, and combinations with *-cunque*;

H. certain adjectives derived by means of a prefixed element but without a suffix (see [§164](#)) from the following nouns:

*anno* (e.g. *bienne*, *trienne*)

*caput* (e.g. *bicipite*, *precipite*)

*color* (e.g. *incolor*, *tricolor*)

*corde* (e.g. *concorde*, *discorde*)

*corno* (e.g. *bicorne*, *unicorne*)

*cuspidate* (e.g. *bicuspidate*, *multicuspidate*)

*fin* (e.g. *affin*, *confin*)

*flor* (e.g. *multiflor*, *uniflor*)

*forma* (e.g. *multiforme*, *uniforme*)

*lingua* (e.g. *bilingue*, *crassilingue*)

*remo* (e.g. *bireme*, *trireme*)

I. the following adjectives which represent the same type as those listed under (h) but which are either isolated formations or cannot be readily recognized in their composition:

*commun*

*enorme*

*exsangue*

*illustre*

*imbecille*

*immun*

*impun*

*indemne*

*inerte*

*infam*

*inope*

*insigne*

*insomne*, *semi-somne*

*isoscele*, *macrosccele*

*multicaule*

*myope*

*participe*

#### §42

On the formation of adjectives as well as of derivatives from them, see [§139](#), [§140](#), [§141](#), [§142](#), [§45-§47](#), [§152-§153](#).



### 3.4. Adverb

#### §43

As in English there are primary and derived adverbs as well as adverbial phrases.

#### §44

The PRIMARY ADVERBS are items in the dictionary and call for no grammatical remarks. Examples are *nunc* 'now,' *minus* 'less,' *plus* 'more,' *hic* 'here,' *ibi* 'there,' *aliquanto* 'somewhat,' *semper* 'always,' etc.

#### §45

The regular DERIVATION OF ADVERBS from adjectives makes use of the suffix *-mente* added to the full form of the adjective. After a final *-c* the vowel *-a-* is inserted.

*natural*: *naturalmente*  
*evidente*: *evidentemente*  
*remarcabile*: *remarcabilemente*  
*auxillar*: *auxiliarmente*  
*clar*: *clarmente*  
*photographic*: *photographicamente*  
*austriac*: *austriacamente*  
*vorace*: *voracemente*

#### §46

In a series of derived adverbs, the suffix *-mente* need be used only with the last.

*clar e franc*: *clar- e francamente*  
*voluntari e frequente*: *voluntari- e frequentemente*

#### §47

A certain number of adverbs listed in the Dictionary appear to be irregularly derived from the corresponding adjectives. Examples are *bon* 'good': *ben* 'well'; *melior* 'better' (adj.) : *melio* 'better' (adv.); *pejor* 'worse' (adj.) : *pejo* 'worse' (adv.); *mal* 'bad': *mal* 'badly'; etc. Formations of this type should be thought of as primary adverbs in the sense that they cannot serve as models for additional adverbial derivatives. The two most numerous single groups of adverbs belonging here are those ending in *-e* (that is, adverbs not distinguishable in form from the corresponding adjectives) and those ending in *-o*.

A. *bastante* 'enough' (adj.): *bastante* 'enough, sufficiently'  
*forte* 'strong': *forte* 'strongly, hard'  
*longe* 'long': *longe* 'far (away)'  
*tarde* 'slow, tardy': *tarde* 'late' (adv.)

### 3. Parts of Speech

---

- B. *certe*'certain': *certo*'certainly'  
*expresse*'express': *expresso*'purposely'  
*juste*'just' (adj.): *justo*'just, justly'  
*mesme*'same': *mesmo*'likewise'  
*multe*'much, many': *multo*'very, much'  
*preste*'agile, ready': *presto*'quickly'  
*quante*'how much, how many': *quanto*'as far as'  
*subite*'sudden': *subito*'suddenly'  
*tante*'so much, so many': *tanto*'so, so much'  
*tote*'all, every': *toto*'all, entirely'

All adjectives in *-issime* permit the formation of adverbs in *-o*, as *bellissime*'most beautiful': *bellissimo*'most beautifully'. The ending *-issimo* can be used in the derivation of adverbs from adverbs, as *ben*'well': *benissimo*'very well'. For the adverbial ordinals *primo*, *secundo*, *tertio*'firstly, secondly, thirdly,' etc., see [§130](#) below.

*Note:* In absolute use (i.e. in exclamations and the like), adverbs in *-o* may be derived from all adjectives with possible *-o/-a* substantivizations. See [§40-§41](#) above.

*Vos crede illo?* - *Claro!*'You believe that?' - 'Obviously?'  
*Exacto, illo es mi opinion!*'Exactly, that's my opinion.'

#### §48

Numerous ADVERBIAL PHRASES are crystallized units and appear as such in the Dictionary.

*in summa*'in short'  
*de nove*'again, anew'  
*de tempore in tempore*'from time to time'  
etc.

The use of all sorts of formulations with adverbial functions is naturally as unlimited as in English. The phrases 'at three o'clock,' 'with my little sister,' and 'at the dentist' have adverbial functions in the sentence, 'At three o'clock I have an appointment with my little sister at the dentist,' and so do the corresponding phrases in

*A tres horas io es citate con mi parve soror a presso del dentista.*

Note that there is likewise no difference between English and Interlingua in the adverbial use of absolute nouns expressing distance and duration of time.

'I'd walk a mile for a pipeful of tobacco'  
*Io irea a pede un millia pro un pipata de tabaco*

'Let him wait a minute'  
*Que ille attende un minuta*

And further

'His sword drawn, he rushed into the kitchen'  
*Su spada tirate, ille se precipitava in le cocina*

'(With) Tears in her eyes, she told me her sad story'  
 (Con) *Lacrimas in su oculos, illa me relatava su triste historia*

#### §49

No adverb of irregular derivation excludes the possibility of a regular synonym.

*ben* or *bonmente* 'well'  
*melio* or *plus ben* or *plus bonmente* 'better'  
*primo* or *primemente* 'firstly'

#### §50

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS does not differ from comparison of adjectives. See [§34-§37](#) above.

*interessantemente* : *plus interessantemente* : *le plus interessantemente* ('interestingly')

*interessantemente*: *minus interessantemente*: *le minus interessantemente*

*Illa scribe plus interessantemente que ille sed illa parla minus interessantemente*  
 'She writes more interestingly than he does but she talks less interestingly'

*Iste chocolate es attractivissimemente impacchettate*  
 'This chocolate is most attractively done up'

#### §51

The FUNCTIONS OF THE ADVERB do not differ from English usage. Note that adjectives both in Interlingua and in English assume at times functions which induce many grammarians to conceive of them as irregular adverbs. It seems simpler to call them adjectives and treat them as such.

*Le rivo curre murmurante per le foresta*  
 'The brook runs babbling through the forest'

*Le sol brilla clar e belle*  
 'The sun shines clear and beautiful'

*Post le tertie cocktail ille vide duple*  
 'After the third cocktail he sees double'

### 3. Parts of Speech

---

*Il debe esser possibile exprimer illo plus breve*

'It must be possible to express that briefer (more briefly)'

Those who say in English, "The brook runs babblingly through the forest," etc., may of course use *murmurantemente*, etc. in Interlingua. Also the adverb in *-o* or *-e* can be used here.

#### §52

The POSITION OF ADVERBS coincides in principle with English usage. The adverb normally precedes what it modifies. It is set off by initial or final position in the sentence or by commas when it is to modify the statement as a whole.

*Ille es extrememente felice*

'He is extremely happy'

*Quando le tempesta arrivava, illes esseva felicemente reunite circa le foco*

'When the storm arrived, they were happily assembled about the fire'

*Felicemente illes esseva al domo quando le tempesta arrivava*

'Luckily they were at home when the storm arrived'

*Etiam tu!*

'You too!'

#### §53

When both an adverb (especially *non* 'not') and a pronoun (which is not the subject) try to get near a verb, the pronoun wins out.

*Io non lo crede*

'I don't believe it'

*Ille non me lo dice*

'He doesn't tell (it to) me'

Note: Contrary to English usage, the adverb *non* 'not' precedes the verb form it modifies.

*Io non pote supportar su profumo*

'I cannot stand her perfume'

*Io non pote visitar le*

'I cannot visit him'

*Io pote non visitar le*

'I can not visit him, i.e., I can choose or it is possible for me not to visit him'

### 3.5. Pronouns

#### §54

The PERSONAL pronouns together with the REFLEXIVES and POSSESSIVES form a pattern as shown in the following table:

	gender	subj.	obj. (* )	reflex.	possess. (#1)	possess. (#2)
1st pers. sg.	-	io	me	me	mi	mie
2nd pers. sg.	-	tu	te	te	tu	tue
1st pers. pl.	-	nos	nos	nos	nostre	nostre
2nd pers. pl.	-	vos	vos	vos	vostre	vostre
3rd pers. sg.	masc.	ille	le	se	su	sue
3rd pers. sg.	fem.	illa	la	se	su	sue
3rd pers. sg.	neut.	illo	lo	se	su	sue
3rd pers. pl.	masc.	illes	les	se	lor	lore
3rd pers. pl.	fem.	illas	las	se	lor	lore
3rd pers. pl.	neut.	illos	los	se	lor	lore
* - direct or indirect object; see §72 below #1 - before a noun and not preceded by an article; see §64 below #2 - after a noun or preceded by an article; see §64 below						

#### §55

The FUNCTIONS of these pronouns are identical with those of their English equivalents except for minor deviations mentioned below.

#### §56

The PERSONAL PRONOUNS in the singular are *io* 'I', *tu* 'you (thou)', *ille* 'he', *illa* 'she', *illo* 'it'

#### §57

The second person singular *tu* is the familiar form of address used with children, friends, in poetry, invocations of supernatural beings, etc.

The parallel "formal" form of address is *vos* 'you' whose primary function is to represent the second person plural. There is no objection to extending the "formal" form to all uses it has in English.

### 3. Parts of Speech

---

*Tu es mi amico* 'You are my friend'

*Vos es mi amico* 'You are my friend'

note that *vos* is identified as a singular by *amico*; 'You are my friends' runs *Vos es mi amicos*

Note: A collateral form of *illa* is *ella*; the two should not be used in the same text.

#### §58

The third person singular distinguishes - as in English - masculine, feminine, and neuter forms. The distinction is not a matter of grammatical gender but of sex.

... *le femina... Illa es belle*  
'... the woman... She is beautiful'

... *le capro... Ille es belle*  
'... the billy-goat... He is handsome';

or

... *le capro... Illo es belle*  
'... the billy-goat... It is handsome'

... *le libro... Illo es interessante*  
'... the book.... It is interesting'

#### §59

In the third person singular neuter there is an unstressed form *il'it'* for use as a grammatical subject.

*Il niva* 'It snows'  
*Il face frigido* 'It is cold'  
*Il es ver que callos es penose* 'It is true that corns are painful'

In the last construction a change in word order, 'That corns are painful is true,' eliminates the anticipating subject 'it.' Hence the possible forms *Que callos es penose es ver* or *Ver es que callos es penose* or *Es ver que callos es penose*. In these forms the real subject is *que callos es penose*, but the use of impersonal verb forms without pronoun may also be extended to constructions of the type *non importa* 'it does not matter'; *face frigido* 'it is cold'; etc.

#### §60

The INDEFINITE PERSONAL PRONOUN is *on* 'one.' It can only be used as the subject of the sentence. In all other cases *uno* takes its place.

*On crede lo que on spera*  
'One believes what one hopes'

*Quando on se promena in iste parco, altere promenatores collide frequentemente con uno*  
'When one takes a walk in this park, other walkers frequently bump into one'

The form *uno* can likewise serve as subject and is then synonymous with *on*. It is the pronominal form of the indefinite article. See §21.

### §61

The personal pronouns in the first and second persons plural are *nos* 'we' and *vos* 'you'. In the third person, *illes*, *illas*, *illos* 'they' are regular plural forms of the corresponding singulars *ille*, *illa*, *illo*, 'he, she, it'. The distinction of masculine, feminine, neuter is optional in the plural. As in English a single form 'they' *illes* may be used for all antecedents. The masculine form is used to refer to mixed antecedents: *Illes - non solmente ille sed etiam illa - es illac* 'They - not only he but she too - are there.'

### §62

In contrast to all other parts of speech, the personal pronouns show a distinction of two CASE FORMS except in the first and second persons plural. The second-case forms in the first and second persons singular are *me* 'me' and *te* 'thee (you)'. In the third persons the second-case forms, *le*, *la*, *lo*, *les*, *las*, *los* 'him, her, it, them' are the second syllable of the corresponding first-case forms.

### §63

As for the FUNCTIONS of the personal-pronoun case forms, a distinction is made between (a) subject, (b) object of a preposition, and (c) object of a verb. The first-case form is used as subject and - in the third persons - as object of a preposition. The second-case form is used as object of a verb and - in the first and second persons - as object of a preposition. To summarize all these forms in a paradigmatic survey, it may be useful to adapt a model sentence like *Io tenta impressionar te con ille* 'I am trying to impress you with him' to all persons in both singular and plural.

1. *io ... te ... ille*
2. *tu ... le ... illa*
3. *ille ... la ... illo*
4. *illa ... lo ... nos*
5. *illo ... nos ... vos*
6. *nos ... vos ... illes*
7. *vos ... les ... illas*
8. *illes ... las ... illos*
9. *illas ... los ... me*
10. *illos ... me ... te*

### 3. Parts of Speech

---

Some of these statements are rather artificial. They are given for the sake of completeness and seem at least theoretically possible if construed as follows:

1. 'I am trying to impress you (thee) with him'  
(e.g.: I am trying to impress you with what I tell you about my big brother)
2. 'You (thou) are trying to impress him with her'  
(e.g.: You are trying to impress your brother with your beautiful fiancée)
3. 'He is trying to impress her with it'  
(e.g.: He is trying to impress the girl by showing her his new automobile)
4. 'She is trying to impress it with us'  
(e.g.: She has invited us to her concert because she wants to impress her audience with the number of her friends)
5. 'It is trying to impress us with you (pl.)'  
(e.g.: The government is trying to impress us, the people, with the fact that you, members of a constitutional assembly, are still allowed to convene)
6. 'We are trying to impress you (pl.) with them (masc.)'  
(e.g.: We are trying to impress you, who are poor friends of ours, with our wealthy fathers)
7. 'You are trying to impress them (masc.) with them (fem.)'  
(e.g.: You are trying to impress the boys with what you tell them about your girl friends)
8. 'They (masc.) are trying to impress them (fem.) with them' (neut.)  
(e.g.: The boys are trying to impress the girls with their beautiful automobiles)
9. 'They (fem.) are trying to impress them (neut.) with me'  
(e.g.: The girls are trying to impress their consciences with the fact that they have helped me)
10. 'They (neut.) are trying to impress me with you (thee)'  
(e.g.: The powers of darkness are trying to impress me with you, the all-powerful Mephistopheles).

#### §64

The POSSESSIVES are adjectives and share with other adjectives the possibility of preceding or following the noun they qualify and of being used as pronouns and nouns. See [§33](#), [§38-§40](#) above. When they precede the noun the construction normally dispenses with an article. In this position - i.e., before a noun and not preceded by an article - the forms of the possessive adjectives drop their final *e* (except in *nostrae* and *vostre* where it follows a consonant cluster).

*Mi fratre e tu soror celebra lor nuptias*  
'My brother and your (thy) sister celebrate their wedding'

*Mi fratre e le fratre tue es bon amicos*  
'My brother and your brother are good friends'

*Mi fratre e le tue es bon amicos*  
'My brother and yours are good friends'



*Patre nostre, qui es ...*  
'Our Father, Who art ...'

*mi matre or le matre mie or (rarely) le mie matre* 'my mother'

*Ille labora nocte e die pro le suos*  
'He works night and day for his people'

#### §65

For the third person masculine, feminine, and neuter, there is only one possessive each in the singular and plural. Where a distinction is needed, it is brought out after the following models:

*Ille e illa velia tote le nocte al lecto de su (or del) moriente patre de illa*  
'He and she are sitting up all night at her dying father's bedside'

*Mi patre e le suo (or le) de ille es amicos*  
'My father and his are friends'

#### §66

The REFLEXIVE pronoun in all third persons is *se* 'himself, herself, itself, themselves.' In the first and second persons the second-case forms of the personal pronouns function as reflexives.

*Io me marita con te, e tu te marita con me*  
'I get married (marry myself) to you and you get married (marry yourself) to me'

*Ille se marita con illa, e illa se marita con ille*

*Illes se marita con illas, e illas se marita con illes*

#### §67

Reflexive constructions are primarily of the type in which the object of the verb happens to be logically identical with the subject. Note that this makes reflexive constructions which in English often dispense with an object pronoun, as in *I wash* in the sense of 'I wash myself.'

*Illa se face indispensabile*  
'She makes herself indispensable'

*Io me vide como alteros me vide*  
'I see myself as others see me'

### 3. Parts of Speech

---

#### §68

Reflexive constructions are also used to express passive ideas when there is no agent involved. 'These books are sold at Bloomingdale's' may be replaced by the translation of 'These books sell themselves at Bloomingdale's.' Note that this covers constructions of the type, 'These books sell well.'

*Iste libros se vende al magazin de Bloomingdale*

*Iste libro se vende multo ben*

*Tal cappellos se vide frequentemente*

'Such hats are often seen' or 'One often sees such hats'

#### §69

SECOND-CASE PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS (except in prepositional constructions) precede the simple tense forms of the verb but follow the participles, imperative forms, and the infinitive.

*Io les sorprendeva*

'I surprised them'

*Pro sorprendere les io debeva currere*

'In order to surprise them I had to run'

*Dirigente se verso le sol, illa precava*

'Turning toward the sun, she prayed'

*Io collabora con illes*

'I collaborate with them'

*Monstra lo a ille*

'Show it to him'

#### §70

In the compound tenses which consist of an auxiliary tense form plus an infinitive or past participle, the personal or reflexive pronouns may precede the auxiliary or follow the participle or infinitive.

*Io ha sorprendite les or io les ha sorprendite*

'I have surprised them'

*Io va sorprendere les or Io les va sorprendere*

'I will surprise them'

In constructions with *facere* 'to cause to, to make,' the two positions of the pronoun suggest logically two distinct meanings.

*Io le face batter le*  
'I make him beat him'

*Io le face batter*  
'I make him beat'

*Io face batter le*  
'(I make beat him) I have him beaten'

### §71

In a combination of two pronouns, one personal and the other reflexive, the latter precedes.

*Illa se nos monstra*  
'She shows herself to us'

*Io me lo dice*  
'I tell (it to) myself'

In a combination of two personal pronouns that one precedes whose relation to the verb is more indirect or remote.

*Illa me lo dice*  
'She tells (it to) me'

*Illa me lo ha dicite* or *Illa ha dicite me lo*  
'She has told (it to) me'

*Pro dicer me lo illa debeva telephonar*  
'To tell (it to) me, she had to telephone'

In a combination of one simple personal or reflexive pronoun with another preceded by a preposition or with a noun object, the simple pronoun precedes.

*Illa ha le tempore pro intertener se con illes*

*Illa ha le tempore pro intertener se con su canes*  
'She has the time to amuse herself with her dogs'

*Illa ha intertenite se con illes* or *Illa se ha intertenite con illes*  
'She has amused herself with them'

### 3. Parts of Speech

---

#### §72

*Note:* There is no distinction between accusative and dative forms of the pronouns like that which appears in some other languages. Parallel to English usage the dative idea is clarified for differentiation or emphasis by the preposition *a*.

*Io inviava un telegramma a mi granpatre*  
'I sent a wire to my grand-father'

*Io lo inviava a mi granpatre*  
'I sent it to my grandfather'

*Io le inviava un telegramma*  
'I sent him a wire'

*Io le lo inviava* or *Io lo inviava a ille*  
'I sent him it' or 'I sent it to him'

#### §73

The place of pronouns in the sentence is not rigidly fixed. The preceding paragraphs describe the norm from which deviations are justified by considerations of rhythm or emphasis.

*Ille ama arachides e illa ama se*  
'He loves peanuts and she loves herself'

*Io vos crede si vos crede me*  
'I believe you if you believe me'

#### §74

The RELATIVES are *que* and *qual*. The former is primarily a relative pronoun, the latter is a relative adjective.

*Le ultime traino que pote portar me ibi a tempore parti in cinque minutas*  
'The last train that can get me there on time will leave in five minutes'

*Ille fuma opium, qual vitio ille ha acquirite durante le guerra*  
'He smokes opium, which vice he acquired during the war'

#### §75

The form *qual* preceded by the definite article *le* is pronominal and can be pluralized.

*Le cavallo e le asino le qual non esseva sellate curreva a velocitate equal*  
'The horse and the donkey which (latter) was not saddled ran at equal speed'

*Le cavallo e le asino le quales non esseva sellate...*  
 'The horse and the donkey which were not saddled..'

§76

The FUNCTIONS OF CASES - with both *que* and *qual* - are carried by the prepositions *de* (for the genitive) and *a* (for the dative). There is a special genitive relative, *cuje* 'whose,' and a form *qui* 'who, whom' which is used only for persons and only as subject or after a preposition.

*Le documentos que le spia portava con se esseva multo importante*  
 'The documents which the spy carried with him were very important'

*Le documentos con que le spia escappava esseva multo importante*  
 'The documents with which the spy escaped were very important'

*Le documentos de que le spia haveva copias esseva multo importante*  
 'The documents of which the spy had copies were very important'

*Le documentos cuje importantia esseva dubitose incriminava le spia*  
 'The documents whose importance was dubious incriminated the spy'

*Le documentos del quales le spia haveva copias...*  
 'The documents of which the spy had copies..'

*Le documentos, le importantia del quales esseva dubitose...*  
 'The documents whose importance was dubious..'

*Le spia qui portava le documentos esseva habile*  
 'The spy who carried the documents was skillful'

*Le spia que le agente de policia haveva vidite portava con se le plus importante documentos*  
 'The spy whom the policeman had seen carried with him the most important documents'

*Le spia de qui le policia haveva establite le identitate...*  
 'The spy whose identity the police had established..'

*Le spia cuje identitate le policia haveva establite...*

*Note:* In contrast to English usage there are no relative constructions without a relative pronoun.

'The tobacco you smoke is abominable'  
*Le tabaco que vos fuma es abominabile*

'The onions you ate smell to high heaven'  
*Le cibollas que tu ha mangiate odora al alte celo*

### 3. Parts of Speech

---

#### §77

For the relative pronoun *lo que* 'what,' see [§21](#) above.

#### §78

The DEMONSTRATIVES are adjectives which can be used as pronouns. Hence they are capable of assuming forms agreeing with the number and sex of their antecedents. In their choice of pronominal endings they do not fall into the pattern of substantivized adjectives (-*e*: neutral; -*o*: male or neuter; -*a*: female); instead they follow the pattern of personal third person pronouns (-*e*: male; -*a*: female; -*o*: neuter).

#### §79

The demonstrative of proximity is *iste* 'this'; that of remoteness *ille* 'that.'

*iste homine e ille femina*  
'this man and that woman'

*ille homine e iste femina*  
'that man and this woman'

*iste tabula e ille libro*  
'this table and that book'

*ille tabula e iste libro*  
'that table and this book'

*Iste pais es libere*  
'This country is free'

*Isto es un libere pais*  
'This is a free country'

*Iste puera odia illa*  
'This girl hates that (one)'

*Que es isto? Que es illo?*  
'What is this? What is that?'

*Ille idiota!*  
'That idiot!'

*Istes es mi studentes*  
'These are my students'

*Istas es mi filias*

'These are my daughters'

*Da me ille libros. Illos es le mies*

'Give me those books; they (those) are mine'

*Iste edition es plus complete que ille duo*

'This edition is more complete than those two'

*Iste edition es plus complete que illos*

'This edition is more complete than those'

(Woman speaking)

*Io es una de illas qui crede que le matrimonio es sancte;*

'I am one of those who believe that matrimony is sacred'

(Man speaking)

*Io es uno de illes qui crede...*

'I am one of those who believe that matrimony is sacred'

*Note:* A collateral form of *ille* is *celle*; the two should not be used in the same text.

### 3.6. Verb

#### §80

The verb has an infinitive and two participles (past and present); it has an imperative; and it has four simple tenses (present, past, future, conditional). It uses auxiliaries to form a full set of compound tenses as well as the passive. It has no personal inflection and no subjunctive (but see [§111](#) below). There is no auxiliary corresponding to English 'to do' for use in emphatic and interrogative constructions. There are no crystallized progressive forms (but see [§94](#)).

#### §81

The INFINITIVE ends always in *-r* with one of the vowels *a, e, i* preceding (For a collateral verbal system with a further distinction of infinitives in *-r* and *-re* after *-e-*, see below [§148 Note](#); also the note on participles, [§97](#).)

*crear*'to create'

*rider*'to see'

*audir*'to hear'

#### §82

On the formation of infinitives as well as of derivatives from them, see [§140](#), [§145-§150](#), [§153-§154](#), [§155](#), [§157](#).

### 3. Parts of Speech

---

#### §83

The infinitive can be used as a noun and as such it corresponds to the English gerund.

*le venir del estate*  
'the coming of summer'

*Vider es credere*  
'Seeing is believing'

*le susurrar del motor*  
'the droning of the motor'

*Iste viagiare de un pais ad altere es fatigante*  
'This traveling from one country to another is fatiguing'

*le ire e venire del clientes...*  
'the coming and going of customers'

*Le faceres del formicas es interessante a observar*  
'The doings of ants are interesting to watch'

*Note:* As the equivalent of the English noun or quasi-noun in '-ing', the infinitive occurs with all sorts of prepositions in constructions corresponding to the English examples 'without going, by doing, before opening, etc.' This also covers the type 'for sewing' as in 'machine for sewing,' i.e., 'sewing machine,' and finally the pattern 'of doing' as in 'capable of doing' and 'we think of doing. ...'

*Illes le condemnava sine audire su defensionem*  
'They condemned him without listening to his defense'

*Per rumpere le osso on poterat forsitan rectificare su gamba*  
'By breaking the bone one may perhaps be able to straighten his leg'

*Post habere passate le suburbios on pote avantiar plus rapidemente*  
'After having passed the suburbs one can get ahead faster'

*Io vole ben humiliar me ante ille usque corrigere su grammatica sed non usque pagar su debitas*  
'I am willing to humiliate myself before him to (the point of) correcting his grammar but not to (the point of) paying his debts'

*Le sala a attendere deberea esse equipate de un machina a scribere*  
'The waiting room ought to be equipped with a typewriter'

*Comencia tu studios per ardere omne libros*  
'Begin your studies by burning all books'



*Illa es capace de perder le traino*  
'She is capable of missing the train'

*Nos pensa ir al teatro*  
'We are thinking of going to the theater'

On the lack of an equivalent of the English 'of' in the last example, see [§87](#) below.

#### §84

Detached from the sentence the infinitive is not preceded by a preposition corresponding to the English 'to' as in 'to go,' etc. This 'to' is a peculiarly English phenomenon and must not be confused with the use of 'to' before an infinitive within a complete sentence. Here 'to' has a grammatical function and is required or omitted in accordance with specific grammatical rules which make us say 'I need to eat' with 'to' and 'I need not eat' without 'to.' Within a sentence the equivalent of English 'to' before the infinitive is *de* or *a* or *pro* or nothing as differentiated below.

#### §85

The preposition *a* is used when the infinitive seems to represent a goal either after an adjective or a verbal construction.

*Nos aspira a realisar nostre ideales*  
'We strive to realize our ideals'

*Iste porta non es facile a aperir*  
'This door is not easy to open'

#### §86

The preposition *pro* is used when the infinitive seems to represent a purpose as in an English construction with 'in order to.'

*Ille veniva pro reparar le fenestra*  
'He came (in order) to repair the window'

*Io mangia pro viver, sed quando nos ha globos de patata io vive pro mangiar*  
'I eat to live but when we have potato dumplings I live to eat'

#### §87

A preposition need not be used when the infinitive can be construed as a noun or as occupying the place of a noun. (a) In an example like, 'It is difficult to walk in the sand,' the infinitive is the logical subject and hence the equivalent of a noun; the statement is identical with 'Walking in the sand is difficult.' Here the infinitive appears without a preceding preposition: *Il es difficile vader in le arena* or *Vader in le arena es difficile*. See [§83](#)

### 3. Parts of Speech

---

above. (b) Whenever a transitive verb is followed by a dependent infinitive as in 'I plan to go to the country,' the idea it represents can be expressed more or less smoothly by a noun, as in 'I plan a trip to the country' *Io plana vader al campania*. Hence after a transitive verb the dependent infinitive is not introduced by a preposition.

*In van io ha tentate convincer le*  
'In vain have I tried to convince him'

*Il es facile rider con le ridentes e difficile plorar con le plorantes*  
'It is easy to laugh with the laughing and hard to weep with the weeping'

*Il es un grande privilegio esser inter vos iste vespere*  
'It is a great privilege to be with you tonight'

*Nos intende ameliorar nostre methodos de agricultura*  
'We intend to improve our agricultural methods'

*Ille diceva que su soror sperava revider nos*  
'He said that his sister hoped to see us again'

*Illa time esser sol con le patiente*  
'She is afraid of being alone with the patient'

#### §88

A preposition before the infinitive cannot be used (a) after constructions with *voler, poter, deber, soler* and (b) after constructions with *lassar, facer*, also *vider, audir* and other verbs of sense perception when they have an object which is at the same time the subject of the following infinitive, as in 'I see him come.'

*Io volerea dormir sed illa debe dansar*  
'I would (want to) sleep but she must dance'

*Illa crede que illa pote cantar*  
'She thinks that she can sing'

*Le matre faceva le doctor venir* or *Le matre faceva venir le doctor*  
'The mother had (made) the doctor come'

*Io senti le nausea montar*  
'I feel the nausea rise'

*Io audi le venir* or *Io le audi venir*  
'I hear him come (coming)'

*Note:* In the statement, *Io face le studente acceptar mi consilio* 'I make the student accept my advice,' the nouns can naturally be replaced by pronouns to yield the simpler form, *Io le face acceptar lo* 'I make him accept it.' Logically the latter statement ought to be a basis for

the two assertions, 'I make him accept' (i.e., I force him to accept) and 'I make accept it' (i.e., I force people in general to accept it). Actually the forms *Io le face acceptar* and *Io face acceptar lo* are correct, though the second would not appear in English as 'I make accept it' but as 'I have it accepted' or 'I cause it to be accepted.' Similar examples are:

*Illa me faceva vender le can*  
'She made me sell the dog'

*Illa faceva vender le can*  
'She had the dog sold'

*Io videva le infantes occider le ave*  
'I saw the children kill the bird'

*Io les videva occider lo*  
'I saw them kill it'

*Io videva occider lo*  
'I saw it being killed'

#### §89

The neutral preposition used with the infinitive is *de*.

*Io es felice de revider vos*  
'I am happy to see you again'

*Le necessitate de ganiar plus es clar*  
'The need to earn more is clear'

*Ille se effortia de mitter le motor in motion*  
'He tries hard to start the motor'

#### §90

*Note:* English constructions of the type, 'I want him to come' can only be rendered as 'I want that he come.' *Io vole que ille veni*. English constructions such as 'I had the pleasure of seeing her' are always rendered as 'I had the pleasure to see her' *Io haveva le placer de vider la*.

#### §91

THE INFINITIVE IS USED to express general orders, prohibitions, etc.

*Non fumar!* 'Don't smoke!, No smoking!'  
*Non sputar super le solo!* 'Don't spit on the floor!'  
*Tener se al dextra!* 'Keep to the right!'

### 3. Parts of Speech

---

#### §92

The infinitive is used after interrogative particles in accordance with the English model, 'I don't know what to do.'

*Io non sape que facer*

*Il es difficile decider se ubi vader*  
'It is difficult to decide where to go'

*Que creder nunc?*  
'What are we to believe now?'

*Nos non sapeva qual pisce prender primo*  
'We did not know what fish to catch first'

#### §93

The PRESENT PARTICIPLE ends in *-nte* which is added to the infinitive less its final *-r*, with the proviso that a preceding *-i-* changes to *-ie-*.

*crear: creante* 'to create: creating'

*vider: vidente* 'to see: seeing'

*audir: audiente* 'to hear: hearing'

*Note:* The following present participles have *-iente* as the preferred form although the corresponding infinitives end in *-er*: *capiente* and all compounds of *-capiente* (*incipiente*, etc.), *faciente* and all compounds in *-ficiante* (*deficiente*, etc.), all compounds of *-jiciante* (*injiciante*, etc.), *sapiente*, and all compounds of *-spiciante* (*inspiciante*, etc.). Since the suffix *-antia* and its variants *-entia*, *-ientia* (see [§152](#)) are derived from present-participle forms, their connection with verbs runs parallel to the formation of present participles. Every verb with a present participle in *-iente* yields a noun in *-ientia*, etc.

#### §94

The present participle is an adjective and as such shares all the characteristics of other adjectives. See [§32-§39](#), [§41](#) above and [§152](#) below. *Note:* The present participle has no function in the verbal paradigm, for there is no crystallized progressive corresponding to English 'I am buying, hoping, etc.' But phrases like 'A dead dog cannot be living' may of course be translated literally in so far as they make sense.

*Un can morte non pote esser vivente*

*Le climate de Alaska va deveniente plus benigne*  
'The climate of Alaska keeps (or goes on or is) getting milder'

*Minnehaha significa "aqua ridente"*  
'Minnehaha means "laughing water"'

*Transversante le oceano, io habeva un placente aventura*  
'Crossing the ocean I had a pleasant (pleasing) adventure'

*Duo passantes videva le accidente*  
'Two passers-by (passing ones) saw the accident'

*Essente surveliate per le policia, ille non osava mover se*  
'Being watched by the police, he did not dare to move'

### §95

The PAST PARTICIPLE ends in *-te* which is added to the infinitive less its final *-r*, with the proviso that a preceding *-e-* changes to *-i-*.

*crear: create* 'to create: created'

*vider: vidite* 'to see: seen'

*audir: audite* 'to hear: heard'

*Note:* Past participles are stressed regularly on the vowel before the last consonant. On a collateral stress system, see footnote to [§148](#) below.

### §96

As in English the past participle is used in past compound tenses and in the passive. See [§105-§106](#), [§112-§113](#) below. It is also an adjective and as such shares all the characteristics of other adjectives. Finally it occurs as an absolute participle.

*Le pluvia impellite per le vento entra trans le fenestra rumpite*  
'The rain driven by the wind comes in through the broken window'

*Io es fatigate*  
'I am tired (fatigued)'

*Le inviata de Valhalla clama le animas del occiditos*  
'The envoy of Valhalla calls the souls of the slain'

*Impellite per le vento, le pluvia entra in le fenestra*

### §97

*Note:* There are considerable numbers of verbal adjectives of the type *fisse* 'split,' *docte* 'learned,' *benedicte* 'blessed,' etc. belonging to the verbs *finder*, *docer*, *benedicer*, etc. Their meaning is identical with that of the normal past participles *findite*, *docite*, *benedicite*, etc. in adjectival use. Verbal adjectives of this type may be made to serve as past participles in all functions inclusive of that of forming past compound tenses. The rule covering this point is as follows: Every verb which has a special contracted (= irregular) deriving stem listed in

### 3. Parts of Speech

---

the Dictionary can form a collateral past participle by adding the ending *-e* to that contracted stem. See also [§152](#), last unit.

*Ille es absorbite in su labor* or *Ille es absorpte in su labor*  
'He is absorbed in his work'

*Ille ha assumite le nomine de su femina* or *Ille ha assumpte le nomine de su femina*  
'He has assumed the name of his wife'

*In le campania on non se senti subjicite al haste del vita moderne* or *In le campania on non se senti subjecte al haste del vita moderne*  
'In the country one does not feel subjected to the hurry of modern life'

#### §98

The TENSE FORMS have no personal inflection and require generally an expressed subject.

#### §99

The PRESENT TENSE is formed from the infinitive by dropping the final *-r*. It is stressed in accordance with the rules given in [§10](#).

*io, tu, etc. crea, vide, audi*  
'I, you, etc. create, see, listen (hear)'

#### §100

The present tense functions naturally as the "UNIVERSAL PRESENT." It extends more freely into the future than is possible in English, especially when the construction contains an unambiguous adverb of time.

*Deo ama le homines*  
'God loves men'

*Io non sape lo que es le nomine de iste animal*  
'I don't know what the name of this animal is'

*Iste vespere io recipe mi canetto*  
'Tonight I am going to get my puppy'

#### §101

The verbs *haber*'to have', *esser*'to be', and *vader*'to go' have a simplified present-tense form which consists of the first syllable of the infinitive: *ha, es, va*.

*Proque io ha un terribile mal de capite il es necessari que io va al doctor*  
'Because I have a terrible headache it is necessary that I go to the doctor'

In the case of *esser*, a distinct optional plural form *son* is available.

### §102

The PAST TENSE is formed from the infinitive by dropping the final *-r* and adding the tense ending *-va*.

*io, tu, etc. creava, videva, audiva*

'I, you, etc. created, saw, heard (listened)'

### §103

The functions of the past tense are the same as in English. Note especially its use in constructions of the type, 'If he was (were) here, I might feel better.'

*Heri nos voleva vider le Mercator de Venetia sed nos non poteva obtener billetes e tunc nos videva le Princessa del Czardas. Si vos cognosceva iste operetta vos comprenderea que io prefere Kalman a Shakespeare.*

'Yesterday we wanted to see the Merchant of Venice but we couldn't get tickets and so we saw the Czardas Princess. If you knew this operetta you would understand that I prefer Kalman to Shakespeare.'

### §104

For *esser*'to be' an optional irregular past *era*'was, were' is available.

### §105

The COMPOUND TENSES OF THE PAST (perfect and pluperfect) are formed as in English by means of the present and past of an auxiliary verb (*haber* 'to have') and the past participle.

*io, tu, etc. ha create, vidite, audite*

'I, you, etc. have created, seen, heard'

*io, tu, etc. habeva create, vidite, audite*

'I, you, etc. had created, seen, heard (listened)'

### §106

The functions of the past compound tenses cover all functions of the corresponding English forms. The perfect is not as restricted as is English and is synonymous with the simple past.

*Su Majestate ha perdite su capite*

'His Majesty has lost his head'

### 3. Parts of Speech

---

*Ludovico Dece-Sex ha perdit su capite*  
'Louis XVI lost his head'

#### §107

The FUTURE is formed from the infinitive by adding the stressed ending *-a*, not distinguished by an accent mark.

*io, tu, etc. creara, videra, audira*  
'I, you, etc. will create, see, hear (listen)'

The CONDITIONAL is formed from the infinitive by adding the ending *-ea* with stress on the *-e-*, not distinguished by an accent mark.

*io, tu, etc. crearea, viderea, audirea*  
'I, you, etc. would create, see, hear (listen)'

#### §108

The functions of the future and conditional do not differ from English usage.

*Si ille attende assatis longe, ille habera un barba*  
'If he waits long enough, he will have a beard'

*Si illa habeva quatro rotas, illa esserea un omnibus*  
'If she had four wheels, she would be an omnibus'

*Si io esseva un avetto, io volarea a te*  
'If I were a little bird, I would fly to you'

*Note:* Both future and conditional have collateral compound forms consisting of the infinitive with the auxiliaries *va* and *velle* respectively.

*Si ille attende assatis longe, ille va haber un barba*  
*Si illa habeva quatro rotas, illa velle esser un omnibus*  
*Si io esseva un avetto, io velle volar a te*

#### §109

More complex verbal constructions - whether one wishes to call them tenses or not - can freely be formed by means of the material discussed above.

*Nos haberea potite venir*  
'We would have been able to come'

*Ille habera finite scriber*  
'He will have finished writing'



## §110

The IMPERATIVE is identical with the present but as a rule it uses no pronouns.

*Ama tu vicino como te mesme!*

'Love thy neighbor as thyself!'

*Aperi le porta!*

'Open the door!'

*Reguarda hic!*

'Look here!'

As in English the pronoun occurs occasionally with the imperative.

*Face tu lo que io commanda*

'Do you what I order (you to do)'

## §111

The functions of the imperative can of course be taken over by an emphatic present tense.

*Tu veni hic immediate!*

'You come here right away!'

For the use of the infinitive with imperative value, see [§91](#) above. The elliptic construction with *que...* '(I wish) that...' is possible with all persons and serves in particular to express the imperative of the first person plural.

*Que ille veni!*

'Let him come!, May he come!'

*Que nos parti!*

'Let's go!'

The dictionary word *sia* 'be (it)' may be construed as a conjunction or as an exceptional subjunctive of *esser*. Taken in the latter sense, it enters into constructions of imperative value.

*Io ama liliis del valles, sia in le campo, sia in un vaso*

'I love lilies of the valley, be it in the open, be it in a vase'

*Le juvene maritos sia felice!*

'(May) The young couple be happy!'

*Sia gentil e face me ille favor*

'Be nice and do me that favor'

### 3. Parts of Speech

---

#### §112

The PASSIVE auxiliary is *esser* 'to be.' The tense forms of this auxiliary are fully covered by the foregoing discussion of the verbal conjugation. The following summary of them may be found convenient.

<i>io etc. es</i> 'I am,' etc.	<i>io essera or io va esser</i> 'I will be'
<i>io esseva or io era</i> 'I was'	<i>io esserea or io velle esser</i> 'I would be'
<i>io ha essite</i> 'I have been'	<i>io habera essite or io va haber essite</i> 'I will have been'
<i>io habeva essite</i> 'I had been'	<i>io haberea essite or io velle haber essite</i> 'I would have been'

The full passive forms consist of the auxiliary with a following past participle.

*Ille es surveliate per le policia* 'He is (being) watched by the police'  
*Ille esseva surveliate per le policia*  
*Ille ha essite surveliate per le policia*  
*Ille habeva essite surveliate per le policia*  
*Ille essera surveliate per le policia*  
*Ille va esser surveliate per le policia*  
*Ille esserea surveliate per le policia*  
*Ille velle esser surveliate per le policia*  
*Ille habera essite surveliate per le policia*  
*Ille va haber essite surveliate per le policia*  
*Ille haberea essite surveliate per le policia*  
*Ille velle haber essite surveliate per le policia*

#### §113

The passive infinitives and participles are similarly composed of the infinitive and participles of the auxiliary with the past participle of the main verb following.

*esser surveliate* 'to be watched'  
*essente surveliate* 'being watched'  
*essite surveliate* 'been watched'

Note that the passive as such cannot be distinguished from a form of *esser* 'to be' with a participial adjective. *Io es maritate* may mean 'I am being married' and 'I am married.'

#### §114

The functions of the passive are the same as in English. Note, however, the use of the reflexive in lieu of an English passive. See [§68](#) above. Furthermore an English passive may

often be rendered by an impersonal construction with *on* 'one,' as in *On non nos ama hic* 'We are not liked around here (One does not like us here).'

## §115

## 3.6.1. TABLE OF CONJUGATION

Infinitive	<i>crear</i> <i>vider</i> <i>audir</i>	to create to see to hear
Present Participle	<i>creante</i> <i>vidente</i> <i>audiente</i>	creating seeing hearing
Past Participle	<i>create</i> <i>vidite</i> <i>audite</i>	created seen heard
Imperative	<i>crea!</i> <i>vide!</i> <i>audi!</i>	create! see! hear!
Active Present	<i>io crea</i> <i>io vide</i> <i>io audi</i>	I create I see I hear
Imperfect	<i>io creava</i> <i>io videva</i> <i>io audiva</i>	I created I saw I heard
Present perfect	<i>io ha create</i> <i>io ha vidite</i> <i>io ha audite</i>	I have created I have seen I have heard
Past perfect	<i>io habeva create</i> <i>io habeva vidite</i> <i>io habeva audite</i>	I had created I had seen I had heard
Future	<i>io creara</i> <i>io videra</i> <i>io audira</i>	I will create I will see I will hear
Future perfect	<i>io habera create</i> <i>io habera vidite</i> <i>io habera audite</i>	I will have created I will have seen I will have heard
Conditional	<i>io crearea</i> <i>io viderea</i> <i>io audirea</i>	I would create I would see I would hear
Conditional perfect	<i>io haberea create</i> <i>io haberea vidite</i> <i>io haberea audite</i>	I would have created I would have seen I would have heard
Passive Present	<i>io es create</i> <i>io es vidite</i>	I am created I am seen

### 3. Parts of Speech

	<i>io es audite</i>	I am heard
Present perfect	<i>io ha essite create</i> <i>io ha essite vidite</i> <i>io ha essite audite</i>	I have been created I have been seen I have been heard
Imperfect	<i>io esseva create</i> <i>io esseva vidite</i> <i>io esseva audite</i>	I was created I was seen I was heard
Past perfect	<i>io habeva essite create</i> <i>io habeva essite vidite</i> <i>io habeva essite audite</i>	I have been created I have been seen i have been heard
Future	<i>io essera create</i> <i>io essera vidite</i> <i>io essera audite</i>	I will be created I will be seen I will be heard
Future perfect	<i>io habera essite create</i> <i>io habera essite vidite</i> <i>io habera essite audite</i>	I will have been created I will have been seen I will have been heard
Conditional	<i>io esserea create</i> <i>io esserea vidite</i> <i>io esserea audite</i>	I would be created I would be seen I would be heard
Conditional perfect	<i>io haberea essite create</i> <i>io haberea essite vidite</i> <i>io haberea essite audite</i>	I would have been created I would have been seen I would have been heard

#### §116

The normal QUESTION is represented by the English type 'Has he come?' There is no interrogative auxiliary and the English type 'Does he come?' cannot be used.

*Ha ille venite?*

*Veni ille?*

*Desira vos salsicias con o sin allio?*

'Do you want sausages with or without garlic?'

*Transversava le rege svede le Mar Baltic o non?*

'Did the Swedish king cross the Baltic or didn't he?'

When the question word is the subject, it is not preceded by the verb.

*Qui es ille homine con le barba rubie?*

'Who is that man with the red beard?'

*Que batte a mi fenestra?*

'What knocks at my window?'

*Que ha tu facite con tu moneta?*

'What have you done with your money?'

*Quando arriva le traino?*

'When does the train come in?'

*Ubi es tu melior medietate?*

'Where is your better half?'

As in English every normal statement can be turned into a question by intonation and the use of a question mark.

'The price of that stuff was three dollars?'

*Le precio de ille cosalia esseva tres dollares?*

'You mean to tell me that you did not do it?'

*Vos vole dicer me que vos non lo faceva?*

The interrogative particle *an*, which has no equivalent in English, can be used to change any statement into a question. It always occurs at the beginning of the sentence.

*An le precio de illo esseva tres dollars?*

*An vos vole dicer me que vos non lo ha facite?*

*An vos e vostre amica es reconciliate?*

'So you and your friend have made up?'

Note: A collateral form of the interrogative particle is *esque*; the two forms, *an* and *esque*, should not be used in the same text.

### §117

The SEQUENCE OF TENSES may be treated in accordance with English usage.

(*Ille diceva: "Io es fatigate."* 'He said: "I am tired."')

*Ille diceva que ille esseva fatigate* 'He said that he was tired'

Deviations from this usage are permissible when suggested by logical considerations.

*Io non crede que un decimetro de lana pesa tanto como un decimetro de ferro.*

- *Nemo diceva que tu debeva creer tal nonsense* or *Nemo diceva que tu debe creer tal nonsense*

'I do not believe that a decimeter of wool weighs as much as a decimeter of iron.

- Nobody said that you had (have) to believe such nonsense.'

### 3.7. Numerals

§118

The simple CARDINAL NUMERALS are:

0	<i>zero</i>	
1	<i>un</i>	10 <i>dece</i>
2	<i>duo</i>	20 <i>vinti</i>
3	<i>tres</i>	30 <i>trenta</i>
4	<i>quattro</i>	40 <i>quaranta</i>
5	<i>cinque</i>	50 <i>cinquanta</i>
6	<i>sex</i>	60 <i>sexanta</i>
7	<i>septe</i>	70 <i>septanta</i>
8	<i>octo</i>	80 <i>octanta</i>
9	<i>nove</i>	90 <i>novanta</i>

*Note:* From *cinquanta* on the tens are regularly derived from the ones by means of the suffix *-anta*.

100	<i>cento</i>
1,000	<i>mille</i>
1,000,000	<i>million</i>
1,000,000,000	<i>milliardo</i>
1,000,000,000,000	<i>billion</i>
1,000,000,000,000,000	<i>billiardo</i>
1,000,000,000,000,000,000	<i>trillion</i>
1,000,000,000,000,000,000,000	<i>trilliardo</i>
1,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000	<i>quatrillion</i>
1,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000	<i>quatrilliardo</i>
1,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000	<i>quintillion</i>
1,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000	<i>quintilliardo</i>

*Note:* From 1,000,000<sup>5</sup> on, the higher powers of a million are formed regularly by means of the suffix *-illion* added to the stem of the multiplicative corresponding to the exponent. For the forms of the multiplicatives, see below [§127](#). The numeral representing a thousand times any power of one million is formed by replacing the final *-ion* by the suffix *-iardo*.

All other cardinals are formed by addition or multiplication.

## §119

The principle of addition is used to combine tens with ones; hundreds with tens and ones; thousands with hundreds, tens, and ones; millions with thousands, hundreds, tens, and ones, etc. The items to be added are juxtaposed, the bigger one preceding. Example: 1,120 *mille cento vinti*. Below a hundred the juxtaposed items are connected by a hyphen. Examples: 72 *septanta-duo*; 11 *dece-un*; 12 *dece-duo*. The use of *e*'and' between the items to be added is always possible and always dispensable. In sums below a hundred it replaces the hyphen. Examples: *mille cento e vinti*; *septanta e duo*.

## §120

The principle of multiplication is used to express multiples of *cento*, *mille*, and all higher powers of *mille*, as *million*, *milliardo*, etc. The multiplier is an adjective which always precedes the multiplicand. The multiplicand is a noun which takes a normal plural ending. Examples: 3,000,000 *tres millones*; 200 *duo centos*.

*Note:* Before *cento* and *mille* the multiplier *un* may be omitted. All the higher powers of 1,000 - as *million*, *milliardo*, *billion*, etc. - introduce the object they count by the preposition *de*. Example: *un billion de dolares*.

## §121

There is no difference in form between cardinal numerals used as adjectives and pronouns except for *un*'one,' whose pronominal forms coincide with those of the indefinite article (see §21 above).

## §122

Examples of cardinal numerals:

13	<i>dece-tres</i>
8.347	<i>octo milles tres centos quaranta-septe</i>
10.987.654.321	<i>dece milliardos nove centos octanta-septe millones sex centos cinquanta-quatro milles tres centos vinti-un</i>

*Le mille-pedes ha perdite quatro centos novanta-nove pedes; illo totevia ha cinque centos un*  
'The millepede has lost four hundred and ninety-nine feet; it still has five hundred and one.'

*In bon tempores ille emplea plus que cento filanderas in su filanda; nunc ille ha travalio pro exactemente quaranta-una*

'In good times he employs more than a hundred girls in his spinning mill; now he has work for exactly forty-one.'

### 3. Parts of Speech

---

#### §123

DECIMALS are written and read with a comma instead of a period:

34.798 (thirty-four point seven nine eight)  
*34,798 (trenta-quatro comma septe nove octo).*

*Note:* The English custom of setting off long numbers by a comma (e.g., 1,234,567,890) would conflict with the decimal comma. In its stead the Interlingua uses a period (e.g. 1.234.567.890).

#### §124

Model readings of arithmetical rules:

$14 + 3,4 = 17,4$  (*dece-quatro plus tres comma quatro es dece-septe comma quatro*)

$20 - 102 = -82$  (*vinti minus cento duo es minus octanta duo*)

$20 \times 17 = 340$  (*vinti vices dece-septe es tres centos quaranta*)

$100 \div 3 = 33,3333$  (*cento dividite per tres es trenta-tres comma tres tres tres tres*)

#### §125

The ORDINAL NUMERALS are adjectives sharing all characteristics of other adjectives in regard to pronominal and substantivized use. The basic ordinals are:

1st	<i>prime</i>
2nd	<i>secunde</i>
3rd	<i>tertie</i>
4th	<i>quarte</i>
5th	<i>quinte</i>
6th	<i>sexte</i>
7th	<i>septime</i>
8th	<i>octave</i>
9th	<i>none</i>
10th	<i>decime</i>
last	<i>ultime</i>

All other simple ordinals are derived from the corresponding cardinals by the suffix *-esime*:

20th	<i>vintesime</i>
30th	<i>trentesime</i>



100th	<i>centesime</i>
1,000th	<i>millesime</i>
1,000,000th	<i>millionesime</i>
1,000,000,000th	<i>milliardesime</i>

In compound numerals only the last element is given the form of an ordinal:

11th	<i>dece-prime</i>
102nd	<i>cento secunde</i>
99th	<i>novanta-none</i>
300th	<i>tres centesime</i>

'The two hundred fiftieth anniversary'  
*le duo cento cinquantesime anniversario*

'This is my third (presumably: cocktail)'  
*Isto es mi tertie*

In Arabic numerals the ordinals are expressed as follows:

*1me, 2nde, 3tie, 4te, 5te, 6te, 7me, 8ve, 9ne, 10me, 20me, 100me*

### §126

The FRACTIONAL adjective 'half' is *medie*, the corresponding noun *medietate*. Joined to the following noun, *medie-* has the value of English 'mid-'

*un medie hora*  
'half an hour (a half hour)'

*duo medie horas*  
'two half hours';

*le duo medietates*  
'the two halves'

*duo e medie horas, duo horas e medie*  
two and a half hours, two hours and a half

*le medietate del membros*  
'half the members'

*le medie membros*  
'the half members (opposed to 'full members)'

### 3. Parts of Speech

---

*mediedie*  
'midday';

*medienocte*  
'midnight'

All other fractional numerals are formed after the following patterns: Phrases like 'a fourth part, two fifth parts, one sixth part, etc.' are expressed as in English by means of simple ordinals: *un quarte parte, duo quinte partes, un sexte parte*, etc. In most cases fractions are expressed in phrases differing from the samples given by the absence of 'part' (*parte*). Instead the ordinals are made into nouns. Note that the model 'three quarter mile' must always be rendered as 'three fourths of a mile.'

*Tres quartos plus tres octavos es un e un octavo*  
'Three fourths and three eighths is one and one eighth'

*Un medie hora e un quarto de hora es tres quartos de hora*  
'Half an hour and a quarter hour is three quarter hours'

In mixed numbers which are used as numeral adjectives, the fraction may follow the noun.

*un pan e tres quartos*  
'one and three quarter loaves of bread'

*duo millones e tres quintos de prisioneros*  
'two and three fifths million prisoners'

#### §127

The MULTIPLICATIVE numeral adjectives are:

*simple* or *simplice* 'simple'

*duple* or *duplice* 'double'

*triple* or *triplice* 'triple'

*quadruple* 'quadruple'

*quintuple* 'quintuple'

*sextuple* 'sixfold'

*septuple* 'sevenfold'

*octuple* 'eightfold'

*nonuple* 'ninefold'

*decuple* 'tenfold'

*centuple* 'hundredfold'

#### §128

MULTIPLICATIVE COMPOUNDS ('half-yearly,' 'threedecker,' etc.) can be formed freely after the following models in which the compounding forms of the numerals function as

prefixes. Note that compounds of this category may involve simultaneous derivation (after the model of English 'three-cornered' which is not simply a compound of 'three' and 'cornered' but a compounded derivative of 'three' and 'corner' with the suffix '-ed'). Cf. also [§155](#), [§163-§164](#) below. The compounding methods illustrated may be applied equally and indifferently - within the limits of practical needs for new formations - to nouns, adjectives, and verbs.

One:

*uni-* plus *trinitate* yields *unitrinitate* 'unitrinity'  
*uni-* plus *corno* 'horn' plus adj. ending yields *unicorne* 'one-horned'  
*uni-* plus *latere* 'side' plus *-al* yields *unilateral*

**new formations:**

*uni-* plus *monte* 'mountain' yields *unimonte* 'single mountain'  
*uni-* plus *anulo* 'ring' plus *-ate* yields *unianulate* 'one-ring'

*Note:* The form *mono-*, before vowels *mon-*, is used as a synonym of *uni-* especially in technical terms.

One and one half:

*sesqui-* plus *plano* yields *sesquiplano* 'biplane with short underplane'  
*sesqui-* plus *pede* 'foot' plus *-al* yields *sesquipedal* 'sesquipedalian'

**new formations:**

*sesqui-* plus *torno* 'turn' yields *sesquitorno* 'one-and-a-half turn'  
*sesqui-* plus *uncia* 'inch' plus *-al* yields *sesquiuncial* 'one and a half inches (in length)'

Two:

*bi-* plus *cyclo* yields *bicyclo* 'bicycle'  
*bi-* plus *metallo* plus *-ismo* yields *bimetallismo* 'bimetallism'  
*bi-* plus *furcar* yields *bifurcar* 'to bifurcate'  
*bi-* plus *lingua* 'language' plus adj. ending yields *bilingue* 'bilingual'

**new formations:**

*bi-* plus *vita* plus *-ate* yields *bivitate* 'two-lived, having two lives'  
*bi-* plus *digito* 'finger' plus adj. ending yields *bidigite* 'two-fingered'  
*bi-* plus *franger* 'to break' yields *bifranger* 'to break twice'

*Note:* The form *di-* is used as a synonym of *bi-* especially in technical terms.

Half:

### 3. Parts of Speech

---

*semi-* plus *deo* 'god' yields *semideo* 'half-god'  
*semi-* plus *official* yields *semiofficial*  
*semi-* plus *somno* 'sleep' plus adj. ending yields *semisomne* 'half asleep'

#### **new formations:**

*semi-* plus *professor* yields *semiprofessor*  
*semi-* plus *occider* 'to kill' yields *semioccider* 'to half kill'  
*semi-* plus *interessante* 'interesting' yields *semiinteressante* 'fifty-fifty interesting'

*Note:* The form *hemi-* is used as a rarer synonym of *semi-* especially in technical terms.

#### Three:

*tri-* plus *folio* 'leaf' yields *trifolio* 'trefoil, clover'  
*tri-* plus *secar* 'to cut' yields *trisekar* 'to trisect'  
*tri-* plus *dimension* plus *-al* yields *tridimensional* 'three-dimensional'  
*tri-* plus *angulo* plus adj. ending yields *triangule* 'three-cornered'

#### Four:

*quadri-* plus *syllabo* plus adj. ending yields *quadrisyllabe*  
'four-syllabic'  
*quadri-* plus *anno* 'year' plus *-al* yields *quadriennal* 'four-yearly'

*Note:* The form *tetra-*, before vowels *tetr-* is used as a preferred synonym of *quadri-* especially in technical terms.

#### Five, six, seven, eight, twelve:

*penta-* plus *metro* yields *pentametro* 'pentameter'  
*hexa-* plus *chordo* yields *hexachordo* 'hexachord'  
*hepta-* plus *-archia* yields *heptarchia* 'rule by seven'  
*octa-* plus *metro* yields *octametro* 'octameter'  
*dodeca-* plus *syllabo* plus adj. ending yields *dodecasyllabe* 'twelve-syllabled'

*Note:* The forms *penta-*, *hexa-*, *hepta-*, *octa-*, and *dodeca-* are used like *mono-*, *di-*, and *tetra-*, that is, especially in technical terms and with the special characteristic that they lose their final *-a* before a vowel.

#### Ten, hundred, thousand:

Multiplicative compounds involving 10, 100, and 1000 are important primarily by virtue of their use as expressions of units of measurement in the metric system and its technological extensions. Multiplication by 10, 100, 1000, and 10,000 is expressed by *deca-*, *hecto-*, *kilo-*, and *myria-* respectively. The parallel forms for multiplication by 1/10, 1/100, and 1/1000 are *deci-*, *centi-*, and *milli-*. The final *-a* and *-o* in *deca-*, *myria-*, and *hecto-* are dropped before an initial vowel of the second compounding element. New analogical formations are

possible whenever required for technological and related needs. The form *myria-* can be used in general (nontechnical) formations with the meaning 'a great many.' A traditional illustration is: *litro* 'liter,' *decalitro* 'ten liters,' *decilitro* 'one tenth of a liter,' *hectolitro* 'a hundred liters,' *centilitro* 'one hundredth of a liter,' *kilolitro* 'a thousand liters,' *millilitro* 'one thousandth of a liter,' *myrialitro* '~ten thousand liters.' A possible analogical formation is *unitate* 'unit,' *decunitate* 'ten units,' *decunitate* 'one tenth of a unit,' *hectunitate* 'one hundred units,' *centiunitate* 'one hundredth of a unit,' *kilounitate* 'one thousand units,' *milliunitate* 'one thousandth of a unit,' *myriunitate* 'ten thousand units.'

Many:

*multi-* plus *million* + *-ario* yields *multimillionario*

*multi-* plus *polo* 'pole' plus *-ar* yields *multipolar*

*multi-* plus *lobo* 'lobe' plus adj. ending yields *multilobe* 'multilobed'

#### **new formations:**

*multi-* plus *cyclo* yields *multicyclo* 'cycle with more than three wheels'

*multi-* plus *linea* 'line' plus *-ate* yields *multilineate* 'many-lined'

*Note:* The form *poly-* is used as a synonym of *multi-* especially in technical terms. To express plurality in the sense of multiplication by several rather than by many, the form *pluri-* is preferred.

#### **§129**

The COLLECTIVE NUMERALS are formed after the model of *dozena* 'dozen' with the suffix *-ena* attached to the simple cardinals

*Illes arrivava in centenas*

'They arrived in groups of a hundred'

*Illos se vende in decenas*

'They are sold in batches of ten'

*Note:* A complete set of collectives would have no practical importance but is theoretically possible. If wanted, the first two would have to be formed irregularly as *bina* 'a group of two' and *trina* 'a group of three.'

#### **§130**

ADVERBIAL NUMERALS are derived from the ordinals either by the normal adverbial suffix *-mente* or by the ending *-o* which takes the place of the final *-e* of adjectives: *tertio* 'thirdly'; *ultimo* 'lastly'; etc.

*Post toto, ille es primamente mi fratre e secundamente mi adversario politic*

'After all, he is first my brother and secondly my political opponent'

### 3. Parts of Speech

---

*Ecce tres possibilitates: Primo, mi opinion es absurde; secundo, mi opinion es theoreticamente correcte sed impractic; e tertio, mi opinion es tanto correcte como practic.*

'There are three possibilities: First, my view is absurd; second, my view is theoretically correct but impractical; and third, my view is as correct as practical'

Expressed in Arabic numerals the numeral adverbs differ from ordinals in that they end in -o: *1mo, 2ndo, 3tio*, etc. See [§125](#) above.

#### §131

The FUNCTIONS OF NUMERALS differ little from English usage. As in English one may for instance say, *capitulo tres* 'chapter three' or *le tertie capitulo* 'the third chapter.' However, in the numbering of sovereigns, contrary to English usage, appositional cardinals are used except in the case of the first where a following substantivized ordinal without article is used.

*Napoleon III (Napoleon Tres)*

'Napoleon the Third'

*Henrico LXVII de Reuss (Henrico Sexanta-Septe)*

'Henry the Sixty-Seventh of Reuss'

*Frederico I (Frederico Primo)*

'Frederic the First'

*Catharina I (Catharina Prima)*

'Catherine the First'

#### §132

In DATES the day of the month is indicated by a cardinal. For the first day a substantivized ordinal is permissible.

*le 1 de januario (le un de januario)*

'the first of January'

*le 12 de novembre (le dece-duo de novembre)*

'the twelfth of November'

*Heri esseva le vinti-octo de februario e hodie es le vinti-nove. - No, hodie es le prime de martio*

'Yesterday was the twenty-eighth of February and today is the twenty-ninth. - No, today is the first of March.'

#### §133

The TIME OF DAY is stated after the following models:

*il es un (hora); a un (hora)*  
'it is one (o'clock); at one (o'clock)'

*il es tres (horas); a tres (horas)*  
'it is three (o'clock); at three (o'clock)'

*dece (horas) e quarte*  
'a quarter past ten (o'clock)'

*dece (horas) minus quarte*  
'a quarter to ten (o'clock)'

*dece (horas) e medie*  
'half past ten (o'clock)'

*dece (horas) e vinti (minutas)*  
'twenty (minutes) past ten (o'clock)'

*dece (horas) minus vinti (minutas)*  
'twenty (minutes) of ten (o'clock)'





## 4. Grammatical Words

### §134

*Note:* The spheres of grammar and vocabulary overlap in that both are concerned with those "little words" which are needed to express the relationship between the words or phrases making up a complete statement. These words are grammatical functionaries (here conveniently labeled "grammatical words"), and as such they are generally classed not in a special category of their own but as prepositions, conjunctions, pronouns, adverbs, and the like.

From the point of view of Interlingua "grammatical words" do, however, form a group of peculiar significance because their international range compared with that of the bulk of Interlingua words is fairly restricted. For most users of Interlingua the "grammatical words" constitute the one and only serious learning obstacle.

The restricted international range of "grammatical words" is due to the fact that their counterparts in the various national languages are so closely associated with matters of basic grammatical structure that they seem to be prevented from invading the realm of other languages on a large scale. A French word like *cigarette* has turned English without much trouble; the French word *sans* as used in English retains its foreign flavor after these many centuries.

To illustrate further: The speaker of another language - let us say a Frenchman - may find it difficult to understand the simple English statement: "Our guests started coming in right after we got back from town." He may be helped by the version: "Our visitors began to arrive right after we returned from town." And as a last resort there is still the possibility that he may understand the version: "Our visitors commenced to arrive immediately after we returned from the city."

The first version is composed of peculiarly English words. The last version uses instead as far as possible the English variants of international words which the Frenchman understands because they occur - in slightly different, that is, peculiarly French forms - in his own language.

With a greater or lesser degree of artifice it is possible to speak and write any one of the Western languages in words which are almost entirely national variants of material represented in the international vocabulary. But there remains in all cases a substantial body of words which resist this trick of internationalizing a national language. In the example just used this body of recalcitrants is represented by words like *our*, *to*, *after*, *we*, *from*, and *the*. All of them are grammatical words although some of them, *as after* and *we*, combine a grammatical function with a clearly palpable meaning.

#### 4. Grammatical Words

---

The Interlingua-English Dictionary (IED) includes a very liberal supply of grammatical words. In addition to those which happen to be international in accordance with the Dictionary's working definition of the term, there are numerous forms which seemed compatible with the general character of the international vocabulary so that their inclusion could serve to broaden the appeal and usefulness of the Dictionary.

A minimum list of grammatical words follows. It is restricted to items considered indispensable for the operation of the language and may be enlarged by further material - especially phrases with grammatical functions - drawn from the IED. A number of words which the IED lists in two equally correct forms appears below in one alternate only. This does not imply that the second is considered less desirable. The pairs in question are: *alicun* - *alcun*; *aliquando* - *alquando*; *aliquanto* - *alquanto*; *alique* - *alco*; *a pena* - *apena*; *depost* - *depois*; *haber* - *haver*; *hic* - *ci*; *illac* - *la*; *illa* - *ella*; *ille* - *celle*; *jam* - *ja*; *pauc* - *poc*; *secundo* - *secun*; *semper* - *sempre*; *si non* - *sinon*; *subinde* - *sovente*; *tanto* - *tan*; *vice* - *vece*.

##### 4.1. A - D

a:	to; at
ab:	<i>prep</i> since, from
alias:	otherwise, in another manner; alias; at another time
alibi:	elsewhere
ali(c)-:	any-, some-
alicubi:	somewhere; anywhere
alicun:	some, any; a few;
<i>alicun cosa</i> :	something, anything
alicuno:	someone, somebody; anyone, anybody
aliquando:	sometime; at any time
aliquanto:	somewhat, to some degree
alique ( <i>pron</i> ):	something, anything
alique ( <i>adv</i> ):	somewhat
alora:	then; in that case, consequently
alto:	top
<i>in alto</i> :	up; upwards; upstairs; on top
ambe:	<i>adj</i> both;
ambes:	<i>pron</i> both
an:	<i>interrogative particle</i> ; <i>conj</i> whether
<i>an il habe le libro?</i> :	has he the book?
ancora:	<i>adv</i> still, yet; <i>interj</i> encore
anque:	also, too;
<i>anque io</i> :	me too
<i>non solo ... ma anque</i> :	not only ... but also
ante ( <i>prep</i> ):	before, in front of; earlier than; above
ante ( <i>adv</i> ):	before, ahead; earlier; forward
<i>ante que</i> :	before
<i>ante-heri</i> :	day before yesterday
a pena:	hardly, scarcely
apud:	near, with, at, by
assatis:	<i>adv</i> enough; rather, fairly, quite

assi:	thus, so
<i>assi ... como:</i>	as ... as
avante:	before, in front, ahead; forward
basso:	bottom
<i>a basso:</i>	down, downward
<i>in basso:</i>	down, below, downward; downstairs
bastante ( <i>adj</i> ):	enough, sufficient
bastante ( <i>adv</i> ):	enough, sufficiently
ben que:	although
bis:	twice; encore
cata:	<i>adj</i> each;
<i>cata uno:</i>	each (one)
causa:	cause
<i>a causa de:</i>	because of
certo:	certainly
circa:	around, about; approximately
como:	how; as, like;
<i>como si:</i>	as though, as if
comocunque:	however, in whatever way
con:	with, together with; by means of
concernente:	concerning
contra ( <i>prep</i> ):	opposite, facing; against
contra ( <i>adv</i> ):	opposite, facing; on the contrary
cuje:	whose
-cunque:	-ever
de:	from, since; of, belonging to; made of; with, by means of
<i>de (+ inf):</i>	to
deman:	tomorrow
<i>deman matino:</i>	tomorrow morning
<i>deman vespere:</i>	tomorrow night
depost ( <i>adv</i> ):	afterwards, later
depost ( <i>prep</i> ):	after, since
<i>depost que:</i>	since, from the time that
desde:	<i>prep</i> since, from
dum:	while, as long as; until; provided that, if only
dunque:	therefore
durante:	during
<i>durante que:</i>	while, whilst

#### 4.2. E - H

e:	and; e ... e: both ... and
ecce:	lo!, see!, behold!; here is, here are
ergo:	therefore, accordingly, consequently, then, ergo
esque:	<i>interr part</i>
<i>esque ille ha le libro?:</i>	has he the book?
et cetera, etc.:	and so forth, and so on, et cetera, etc.
etiam:	also, likewise, too; even, even yet, yet;
<i>non solmente ... sed etiam:</i>	not only... but also

#### 4. Grammatical Words

---

ex:	out of, from
excepte:	except, excepting
extra ( <i>adv</i> ):	without, on the outside; besides, in addition, extra;
extra ( <i>prep</i> ):	outside of, without, beyond; except, excepting; besides, in addition to
foras ( <i>adv</i> ):	out of doors, outside, out; from without
foras ( <i>prep</i> ):	beyond, except
<i>foras de</i> :	outside of, without
<i>foras de se</i> :	beside oneself
forsan:	perhaps, maybe
gratis:	gratis, free of charge
haber:	to have
il ha:	there is, there are
heri:	yesterday
hic:	here
<i>de hic a (un hora)</i> :	(an hour) from now
<i>usque (a) hic</i> :	up to here, thus far; up to now, hitherto;
<i>hic juncte</i> :	herewith
hodie:	today

#### 4.3. I - L

ibi:	there
ibidem:	in the same place; ibidem ibid.,; Ib.
idem:	the same (thing); idem; id.
igitur:	<i>adv/conj</i> then, therefore, thereupon
il:	<i>impers pron</i> it
illa:	she, her
illac:	there
ille:	he, it; him; that, the former
illes:	they; them
illo:	it
in:	in, into
infra ( <i>adv</i> ):	below, underneath, beneath
infra ( <i>prep</i> ):	below, under, beneath
insimul:	together
inter:	between, among
interim:	meanwhile, in the meantime
intertanto:	meanwhile, in the meantime
intra:	<i>adv/prep</i> within
intro:	inwardly, internally, on the inside, in
io:	I
ipse:	myself, yourself, himself, etc.
<i>hodie ipse</i> :	this very day
iste:	this, the latter
ita:	thus, so; just so, yes; and so, consequent]y; accordingly
jam:	already, at once, right away; just now, a moment ago; indeed,
<i>non... jam</i> :	surely
	no longer

<i>jammais</i> :	ever, at any time
<i>non... jammais</i> :	never
<i>jammais!</i> :	never!
<i>justo</i> :	just, exactly
<i>justo nunc, justo ora</i> :	just now, right now
<i>juxta (adv)</i> :	near, near by
<i>juxta (prep)</i> :	near, near to, next to
<i>la</i> :	her
<i>le</i> :	<i>art</i> the
<i>le</i> :	<i>pron</i> him
<i>les</i> :	them
<i>lo</i> :	it
<i>lo que</i> :	that which, what
<i>loco</i> :	place
<i>in loco de</i> :	instead of
<i>in su loco</i> :	instead
<i>longe</i> :	far; away, far away
<i>de longe</i> :	from afar, from a distance
<i>lontan</i> :	distant, far-off
<i>lor</i> :	their
<i>lore</i> :	their

#### 4.4. M - P

<i>ma</i> :	but
<i>non solo ... ma anche</i> :	not only... but also
<i>malgrado</i> :	in spite of
<i>maniera</i> :	manner, way
<i>de maniera que</i> :	so that
<i>me</i> :	me
<i>melio</i> :	<i>adv</i> better
<i>tanto melio</i> :	so much the better
<i>melior</i> :	<i>adj</i> better
<i>le melior</i> :	the best
<i>mesme</i> :	same; myself, yourself, himself, etc. (as in "the king himself")
<i>mesmo</i> :	likewise; even
<i>hodie mesmo</i> :	this very day
<i>ora mesmo</i> :	right now
<i>mi</i> :	my
<i>mie</i> :	mine
<i>minus</i> :	less; minus
<i>a minus que</i> :	unless
<i>al minus</i> :	at least
<i>totos minus ille</i> :	all but him
<i>le minus</i> :	the least
<i>multo</i> :	very; much
<i>nam</i> :	for
<i>nemo</i> :	no one, nobody
<i>ni</i> :	neither, nor, also not

#### 4. Grammatical Words

---

nihil, nil:	nothing
nimie:	<i>adj</i> too much, too many
nimis:	<i>adv</i> too, too much
no:	<i>adj</i> , no
non:	not; no
<i>si non</i> :	if not; except, unless it be
nondum:	not yet
nonne:	<i>interr part</i> is it not?
<i>il es ver, nonne?</i> :	it is true, isn't it?
nonobstante (prep):	despite, in spite of
nonobstante ( <i>adv</i> ):	nevertheless
nos:	us, we
nostre:	our, ours
nulle:	<i>adj</i> not any, no; null, worthless, without legal force
nullemente:	in no way, not at all
nunc:	now
nunquam:	never
nusquam:	nowhere
o:	or
<i>o ... o</i> :	either ... or
olim:	once, formerly; at a future time, sometime (in the future)
omne:	<i>adj</i> all; each, every
<i>de omne mano</i> :	from every hand
<i>de omne latere</i> :	from every side
<i>in omne caso</i> :	in any case
<i>omne cosa</i> :	everything
<i>omnes</i> :	<i>pron</i> all
on:	one
ora:	now
parte:	part
<i>a parte</i> :	apart, aside
<i>in parte</i> :	in part
<i>del parte de</i> :	on the part of
<i>de parte a parte</i> :	through and through
<i>in nulle parte</i> :	nowhere
passato:	ago
pauc:	<i>adj</i> little, not much; few
<i>un pauc (de)</i> :	a little
<i>pauc a pauc</i> :	little by little
<i>in pauc</i> :	shortly, before long
pauco:	<i>adv</i> little
per:	through; during, throughout; by, through, by means of; per
perque:	<i>adv/conj</i> why; because
plus:	more; plus
<i>le plus</i> :	the most
<i>de plus</i> :	furthermore, besides
<i>de plus in plus</i> :	more and more
<i>in plus</i> :	further more, in addition, also

<i>al plus:</i>	at best
<i>plus o minus:</i>	more or less
<i>non ... plus:</i>	no more; no longer
<i>pois:</i>	<i>adv</i> afterwards, thereafter; <i>conj</i> for
<i>pois que:</i>	since, as, because
<i>post (adv):</i>	behind, back, backwards; afterwards, after
<i>post (prep):</i>	behind; after
<i>post que:</i>	since, because
<i>postea:</i>	afterwards, thereafter
<i>postquam:</i>	<i>conj</i> after; as soon as
<i>potius:</i>	rather; sooner
<i>presso:</i>	<i>adv/prep</i> near, close
<i>a presso de:</i>	at the home of; in care of; with, among
<i>presto:</i>	presto, quickly, quick as a wink
<i>preter (adj):</i>	past, beyond
<i>preter (prep):</i>	past, along, alongside of; beyond; except, excepting; in addition to
<i>pridem:</i>	long ago
<i>pro:</i>	for, in favor of; in exchange for, in place of
<i>pro (+ inf):</i>	(in order) to
<i>proque:</i>	<i>adv/conj</i> why; because

#### 4.5. Q - T

<i>qual:</i>	which; what
<i>le qual:</i>	which; that; who
<i>qualcunque:</i>	any, whatever
<i>quando:</i>	<i>adv/conj</i> when
<i>quandocunque:</i>	whenever
<i>quante:</i>	add how much, how many
<i>quanto:</i>	<i>adv</i> as much as; as far as
<i>quanto ... tanto:</i>	the ... the
<i>quanto a:</i>	as for
<i>quare:</i>	wherefore, why
<i>quasi:</i>	almost, nearly; in a certain sense, in a way
<i>quasi que:</i>	as if
<i>que (interr pron):</i>	what
<i>que (rel pron):</i>	who, whom, which, that
<i>qui:</i>	who, whom
<i>de qui:</i>	whose
<i>quia:</i>	because, for
<i>quicunque:</i>	whoever, whomever, whosoever
<i>quo (adv):</i>	whither, where; wherefore
<i>quo (conj):</i>	so that, in order that
<i>re:</i>	about, concerning
<i>retro:</i>	back, backwards; ago
<i>a retro:</i>	backwards
<i>salvo:</i>	save, but, but for
<i>salvo que:</i>	save that, but that

#### 4. Grammatical Words

---

satis:	enough; rather, somewhat
esser satis:	to be enough
haber satis:	to have enough
satis de (tempore, etc.):	enough (time, etc.)
se:	<i>refl pron</i> himself; herself; itself; themselves
secundo:	<i>prep</i> (following) after; along, by; according to
secundo que:	according as
sed:	but
semper:	always
si (adv):	thus, so; yes
si ... como:	as... as
si (conj):	if; whether
si non:	if not; except, unless it be
sia:	be, may be, let there be
sia ... sia:	be (it) ... or be (it); whether ... or
qual que sia:	whatever, whatsoever
sin:	<i>prep</i> without
sol:	<i>adj</i> sole, alone, only
viver sol:	to live alone
sentir se sol:	to feel lonesome, lonely
solo:	<i>adv</i> only, merely
non solo ... ma anque:	not only... but also
su:	his, her, its
sub:	<i>prep</i> under, below, beneath
subinde:	immediately after, just after, forthwith; repeatedly, frequently, often, from time to time
subito:	suddenly, unexpectedly
subtus:	<i>adv</i> below, beneath, underneath
sue:	his, hers, its
super (prep):	on, upon; on top of; over, above; about, concerning, on
super (adv):	above, on top
super toto:	above all
supra (prep):	above, over
supra (adv):	on the top, above
sur:	on, upon; on top of
tal:	such, such a
tal e tal:	such and such
talmente:	<i>adv</i> so
un libro talmente belle:	so beautiful a book, such a beautiful book
tamen:	yet, however, nevertheless, not withstanding
tante:	<i>adj</i> so much, so many
tante per cento:	so much per hundred, percent age
tante ... como:	as much, as many... as
tanto:	<i>adv</i> , so, so much
tanto ... como:	as much... as
in tanto que:	in as much as
tanto plus ... que:	all the more... that
quanto ... tanto:	the... the



<i>tarde:</i>	<i>adj</i> , late
<i>plus tarde:</i>	later; later on
<i>al plus tarde:</i>	at the latest
<i>te:</i>	you, thee; yourself, thyself
<i>tosto:</i>	presently, soon, promptly
<i>plus tosto:</i>	rather, sooner
<i>si tosto que:</i>	as soon as
<i>tote:</i>	<i>adj</i> all; every, each
<i>tote le (homines):</i>	all (men)
<i>totos:</i>	all, everyone
<i>de tote (le) corde:</i>	wholeheartedly
<i>tote (le) duo:</i>	both
<i>totevia:</i>	yet, still, nevertheless
<i>toto:</i>	<i>n</i> all, everything
<i>le toto:</i>	the whole
<i>super toto:</i>	above all
<i>ante toto:</i>	before all
<i>post toto:</i>	after all
<i>del toto:</i>	at all
<i>in toto:</i>	entirely, wholly, in toto
<i>toto:</i>	<i>adv</i> all, quite, wholly
<i>trans:</i>	across, over, beyond, on the farther side of
<i>troppo:</i>	too, too much
<i>troppo (de) (libros, etc.):</i>	too many (books, etc.)
<i>troppo (de) (aqua, etc.):</i>	too much (water, etc.)
<i>de troppo:</i>	superfluous, in the way, de trop
<i>tu:</i>	your, thy
<i>tue:</i>	yours, thine
<i>tunc:</i>	then

#### 4.6. U - Z

<i>ubi (adv):</i>	where
<i>ubi (conj):</i>	where; when; as soon as; wherewith; in which
<i>a ubi:</i>	where, whither; de ubi: from where, whence
<i>ubicunque:</i>	wherever
<i>ubique:</i>	everywhere; anywhere, wheresoever, wherever
<i>ultra (adv):</i>	on the other side, beyond, farther
<i>ultra (prep):</i>	on the farther side of; beyond, past; besides
<i>ultra illo:</i>	besides, moreover
<i>ultra que:</i>	aside from the fact that
<i>un:</i>	a, an
<i>le un le altere:</i>	one another, each other
<i>le unes le alteres:</i>	one another, each other
<i>uno:</i>	<i>indef pron</i> one
<i>unquam:</i>	ever, at any time
<i>usquam:</i>	somewhere
<i>usque</i>	<i>prep</i> (all the way) to, up to; till, until
<i>usque nunc:</i>	up to now

#### 4. Grammatical Words

---

verso:	towards, to
via ( <i>adv</i> ):	away; off
via!:	go away!, begone!
via ( <i>prep</i> ):	by way of, via
vice:	turn, stead; time (as in "three times")
<i>alicun vices</i> :	sometimes
<i>un vice</i> :	once; on one occasion; formerly
<i>un vice que</i> :	once, once that
<i>in vice de</i> :	instead of; a vices: at times
<i>altere vice</i> :	a second time
<i>plure vices</i> :	several times, repeatedly
viste:	considering; viste que considering that
voluntarie:	willingly, readily, gladly, with pleasure
vos:	you; yourself, yourselves
vostre:	your, yours
ya:	<i>adv</i> indeed, certainly, of course
<i>ya (io lo crede)</i> :	(I) do (believe it)

## 5. Word Building

### §135

For the THEORY OF WORD BUILDING reference is made to the Interlingua-English Dictionary, "Introduction," pp. xlv-xlix.'

The following observations may serve to elucidate the problem. In a discussion of, let us say the English verb, it is customary to take up a variety of formations under the heading of "special finite forms." Thus "interests" for instance is called the third-person present-tense form of the verb "to interest." But also the participles "interesting" and "interested" are treated as forms of the verb although they function quite freely as independent adjectives and might as well be called derivatives. There is nothing wrong in this, but if the adjectives "interesting" and "interested" are regarded as special forms of "to interest," then it is not easy to see why one should not be allowed to speak not only let us say of "teaches, reteach, taught, teaching" but also of "teacher, teachings, teachery, teacherly, teacheress, school-teaching, etc." as special forms of "to teach."

This somewhat unconventional way of looking at "derivatives" is extremely useful in an auxiliary language because it casts a very clear light on the principles of free or autonomous word building. Just as in English no one consults a dictionary to ascertain whether he may use the form "weighs" on the basis of the infinitive "to weigh," so no one - if English were a constructed auxiliary language - should feel the need to consult a dictionary before building words of the type of "roachy" (on "roach" after the model of "lousy") or "deedlessness" (on "deedless").

In English or any other traditional language convention and usage will set a hampering limit to this type of word building. Not so in Interlingua. Here the limit is set by usefulness and clarity.

The first of these points, that of "usefulness," is hardly in need of further comment. Interlingua - like any traditional language - can build large numbers of "special forms" (or derivatives) which no one ever needs. A "rainer" - to use an English example - is "man who rains," but to most people it will come as a surprise that this word is actually listed in dictionaries.

The prerequisite of clarity leads to the formulation that in the auxiliary language only those formative elements can be tolerated in free or autonomous formation which appear throughout the language as a whole with clearly definable values. If the English formation "mountibund" is impossible, the reason is not that "to mount" and "-ibund" fail to occur. They do. But "-ibund" is incapable of active formation because its occurrence in "moribund" and "furibund" does not give it an easily definable value.

## 5. Word Building

---

Free formations must be so clear that it makes perfect sense to speak of them as "special forms" of the base word from which they are derived.

The BASIC PRINCIPLE OF PRACTICAL WORD BUILDING in Interlingua is analogical. Every new formation must clearly be patterned after a model in the established vocabulary. A description of the most common structural patterns in the established vocabulary coincides with the prescription governing new formations.

In the succeeding paragraphs the most important structural types are described, illustrated, and applied to new formations under the headings listed below.

### I. DERIVATION

#### A. FROM NOUNS

- a. TO FORM NOUNS
- b. TO FORM ADJECTIVES
- c. TO FORM VERBS

#### B. FROM ADJECTIVES

- a. TO FORM NOUNS
- b. TO FORM ADJECTIVES
- c. TO FORM ADVERBS
- d. TO FORM VERBS

#### C. FROM VERBS

### II. COMPOUNDING

#### A. BY MEANS OF PREFIXES

- a. GENERAL
- b. TECHNICAL

#### B. BY MEANS OF COMPOUNDING FORMS

### III. COMPOUNDING DERIVATION

#### §136

The term DERIVATION is here used to refer to word building by means of suffixes. In derivation the part of speech of the resulting formation is determined by the suffix. Nouns and adjectives consisting of stem and termination lose the latter in the derivational process. The termination of the derivative is part of the suffix. Terminations in this sense are, in the case of nouns and adjectives the final vowels *a*, *e*, *o*, and foreign endings like Latin *-us*, *-um* or Greek *-os*, *-is*, etc. For verbs, see [§146](#) below.

#### §137

In most instances the joining of stem and affix is a matter of simple juxtaposition.

When the stem ends in *-i-* and the suffix begins with the same vowel, the full derivative is spelled with only one *-i-*: *rubie* 'red' plus *-ificar* > *rubificar* 'to redden, make red.'

Note that the addition of suffixes with initial vowels to stems ending in *-c-* may change the sound value of that consonant. When through derivation an originally hard *c* (as in *franc*) comes to precede *i* or *e*, its pronunciation changes as a rule to soft *c* (as in *Francia*).

Inversely, when an originally soft *c* (as in *cortice* 'bark') comes through derivation to precede an *a* or *o*, its pronunciation changes as a rule to hard *c* (as in *cortical*). However, a soft *c* remains soft *c* before the suffixes *-ada*, *-ata*, *-age*, *-alia*, *-astro*, *-astra* and must be spelled *-ci-*: *nuce* 'nut' plus *-ada* = *nuciada*. Similarly hard *c* remains hard *c* before the suffixes *-eria*, *-ero*, *-esc*, *-ese*, *-essa*, *-etta*, *-ette*, *-etto*, *-iera*, *-iero*, *-issime*, *-issimo* and must be spelled *-ch-*: *porco* 'pig' plus *-eria* = *porcheria* 'pork shop.'

Note that the seeming irregularity of an example like *ricchezza* 'riches' = *ric* 'rich' is due to the fact that *cc* is spelled *c* when it appears at the end of a word.

Words ending in *-age* (whether this group of sounds be a suffix or not) retain the soft pronunciation of *-g-* (like *z* in 'azure') in derivatives based on them. When the suffix begins in *a* or *o*, the *g* is replaced by *-gi-*: *orange* plus *-ada* = *orangiada*; but *orange* plus *-eria* = *orangeria* 'orange greenhouse.'

### 5.1. Nouns derived from nouns

#### §138

Nouns are derived FROM NOUNS by means of the suffixes listed below. On the formation of nouns representing females parallel to nouns in *-o* representing males, see §24 above.

*-ada*

1. 'product made from ...' e.g.  
*limon* 'lemon' > *limonada* 'lemonade';  
**new formation:** *persica* 'peach' > *persicada* 'peachade (peach drink)';
2. 'series of ...' e.g.  
*columna* 'column' > *columnada* 'colonnade';  
**new formation:** *fenestra* 'window' > *fenestrada* 'row of windows'  
*Note:* For derivatives from verbs, see §152.

*-age*

(pron. *-aje*) 'collection of ...' e.g.  
*folio* 'leaf' > *foliage*;  
**new formation:** *fructo* 'fruit' > *fructage* 'fruitage'  
*Note:* Spelled *-agi-* before *-a-* or *-o-* of additional suffix. For derivatives from verbs, see §152.

*-alia*

'worthless collection of ...' e.g.  
*ferro* 'iron' > *ferralia* 'scrap iron';  
**new formation:** *papiro* 'paper' > *papiralia* 'waste paper'; also: 'old papers, heaps of working papers, etc.'

*-ano*

1. 'native, citizen, or inhabitant of ...' e.g.  
*Africa* > *africano* 'African';  
**new formation:** *Atlanta* > *atlantano* 'Atlantan';
2. 'language of ...' e.g. *v Italia* 'Italy' > *italiano* 'Italian';  
**new formation:** *Samoa* > *samoano* 'Samoan';
3. 'adherent or follower of ...' e.g.

## 5. Word Building

---

*Mohammed* > *mohammedano* 'Mohammedan';

**new formation:** *Wesley* > *wesleyano* 'Wesleyan'

*Note:* Used with names of places and persons. In the case of place names not ending in *-a* or *-o* as also of all names of persons, the euphonic variant *-iano* is to be preferred, e.g.

*Marte* 'Mars' > *martiano* 'Martian.' The corresponding adjective form is *-an* (*-ian*). In senses (1) and (3) the corresponding feminine is *-ana* (*-iana*). In senses (1) and (2) synonym of *-ese*. In senses (1) and (3) synonym of *-ita*.

-ario

1. 'person concerned with or characterized by ...' e.g.

*mission* > *missionario* 'missionary';

**new formation:** *ferrovia* 'railroad' > *ferroviario* 'railwayman'

*Note:* Synonym of *-ero* and *-ista* which differ from it in that *-ero* stresses professional concern while *-ista* suggests a person's preoccupation (professional or avocational) with a system, a science, an art, etc. Parallel forms in both *-ario* and *-ero* are often possible. The corresponding adjective form is *-ari*. The corresponding feminine is *-aria*.

2. 'collection of ...' e.g.

*vocabolo* 'word' > *vocabulario* 'vocabulary'; *herba* 'herb' > *herbario* 'herbarium';

**new formations:** *proverbio* 'proverb' > *proverbiario* 'collection of proverbs';

*insecto* 'insect' > *insectario* 'insectarium';

3. 'place containing ...' e.g.

*grano* 'grain' > *granario* 'granary';

**new formation:** *feno* > *fenario* 'hayloft, haymow'

-astro

1. 'inferior or worthless ...' e.g.

*poeta* 'poet' > *poetastro* 'poetaster';

**new formation:** *judice* 'judge' > *judiciastro* 'blundering judge';

2. 'related through remarriage of a parent' e.g.

*patre* 'father' > *patraastro* 'stepfather'

*Note:* Used with nouns indicating male beings. The corresponding feminine is *-astra*.

-ata

'contents of or quantity contained in one ...' e.g.

*coclear* 'spoon' > *coclearata* 'spoonful';

**new formation:** *calice* 'chalice' > *caliciata* 'chaliceful'

-ato

'function, status, rank, jurisdiction, period of office, or territory of a ...' e.g.

*duce* 'duke' > *ducato* 'duchy, dukedom'; *novicio* 'novice' > *noviciato* 'novitiate';

**new formations:** *capitano* 'captain' > *capitanato* 'captaincy'; *discipulo* 'disciple' >

*discipulato* 'discipleship'

-eria

(pron. -er`ia)

1. 'place where... is made, worked, kept, or sold' e.g.

*lacte* > 'milk' *lacteria* 'dairy';

**new formation:** *strumento* 'tool' > *strumenteria* 'tool shop';

2. 'art, craft, trade, or practice of working with...; also: the product of such work' e.g.

*drappo* 'cloth' > *drapperia* 'drapery';

**new formation:** *arco* 'bow' > *archeria* 'archery';

3. 'behavior of a... or like that of a ...' e.g.

*diabolo* 'devil' > *diaboleria* 'deviltry';

**new formation:** *clown* > *clowneria* 'clownery'

*Note:* In senses (1) and (2) the corresponding agent form is *-ero*. Coincides with *-ero* plus *-ia*. For derivatives from verbs see [§152](#).

**-ero**

'one who works with or deals in ...' e.g.

*barba* 'beard' > *barbero* 'barber'; *banca* 'bank' > *banchero* 'banker';

**new formation:** *ambulantia* 'ambulance' > *ambulantiero* 'ambulance driver'

*Note:* Further derivatives in *-ia* coincide with formations in *-eria*. Corresponding adjectives are often formed in *-ari*. The corresponding feminine is *-era*. Synonym of *-ario* and *-ista*.

**-ese**

1. 'native, citizen, or inhabitant of ...' e.g.

*Geneva* > *genevese* 'Genevese';

**new formation:** *Salamanca* > *salamanchese* 'Salamanquese';

2. 'language of ...' e.g.

*Japon* 'Japan' > *japonese* 'Japanese';

**new formation:** *Brooklyn* > *brooklynese* 'Brooklynese'

*Note:* No distinct form for the feminine, but cf. the synonyms *-ano*, *-iano*. In sense (1) also synonym of *-ita*. Identical in form and corresponding in meaning to adjectival *-ese* (see [§139](#)).

**-essa**

1. 'female ...' e.g.

*tigre* 'tiger' > *tigressa* 'tigress';

**new formation:** *vulpe* 'fox' > *vulpessa* 'vixen';

2. 'wife of a ...' e.g.

*conte* 'count' > *contessa* 'countess';

**new formations:** *mayor* > *mayoressa* 'mayoress'; *inca* 'Inca' > *inchessa* 'wife of the Inca'

*Note:* Synonym of *-a* which is to be preferred when the male ends in *-o*. See [§24](#).

**-eto**

'grove of... trees' e.g.

*pino* 'pine' > *pineto* 'pine grove';

**new formation:** *orangiero* 'orange tree' > *orangiereto* 'orange grove'

**-etto, -etta**

'little, small, or minor ...' e.g.

*hacha* 'ax' > *hachetta* 'hatchet'; *pacco* 'pack, bundle' > *pacchetto* 'package, packet';

**new formations:** *boteca* 'shop, store' > *botechetta* 'little shop'; *uxor* 'wife' > *uxoretta*

'little wife, wifie'; *poeta* 'poet' > *poetetto*, *poetetta* 'little poet, little poetess'

*Note:* The endings *-o* and *-a* express male and female. When no sex is involved, *-etta* is used with nouns in *-a*, *-etto* in all other cases.

**-ia**

(pron '-ia') 'country, province or region of the ...s, or named for ...' e.g.

*arabe* 'Arab' > *Arabia*;

**new formations:** *Tocharo* 'Tocharian' > *Tocharia*; *Wilson* > *Wilsonia*

*Note:* Used with names of peoples and persons; for derivatives from adjectives, see

## 5. Word Building

---

### §141.

-ia

(pron. -'ia)

1. 'state, quality, status or jurisdiction of (a, an) ...' e.g.  
*abbate*'abbot' > *abbatia*'abbacy, abbotcy';  
**new formation:** *capitano*'captain' > *capitania*'captaincy, captainship';
2. 'art, science, or practice, also profession, establishment, etc. of (a, an) ...' e.g.  
*geologo*'geologist' > *geologia*'geology'; *idolatra*'idolater' > *idolatria*'idolatry';  
**new formations:** *radiotossicologo*'radiotoxicologist' > *radiotossicologia*  
'radiotoxicology'; *heliolatra*'sun worshiper, hellolater' > *heliolatria*'sun  
worship, heliolatry'; *bottinero*'shoemaker' > *bottineria*'shoemaker's trade or  
shop'

*Note:* Used mostly with compounds. Coincides with *-eria* when used with formations in *-ero*. For derivatives from adjectives, see [§141](#).

-ica

'science or study of the ...' e.g.

*electron* > *electronica*'electronics';

**new formation:** *fonema*'phoneme' > *fonemica*'phonemics'

*Note:* Used principally in formations parallel to adjectives in *-ic* (see [§139](#)) and nouns in *-ico*.

-ico

'one skilled in the art or science of ...' e.g.

*historia*'history' > *historico*'historian';

**new formation:** *teoria*'theory' > *teorico*'theoretician'

*Note:* Used principally in formations parallel to adjectives in *-ic* (see [§139](#)).

-iera

1. 'that which contains, covers, or protects ...' e.g.

*sucro*'sugar' > *sucriera*'sugar bowl';

**new formation:** *bira*'beer' > *biriera*'beer can, growler';

2. 'field, mine, quarry, etc. where... grows or is found' e.g.

*ris*'rice' > *risiera*'rice field';

**new formation:** *baca*'berry' > *bachiera*'berry patch'

-iero

'tree, bush, plant, etc. bearing or producing ...s' e.g.

*amandola*'almond' > *amandoliero*'almond tree';

**new formation:** *corco*'cork' > *corchiero*'cork tree'

*Note:* Fruit names in *-a* have often parallel tree names in *-o* (e.g. *persica*-*persico*; *pira*-*piro*). In such cases the formation in *-iero* is synonymous with that in *-o*.

-il

'place where ...s are kept' e.g.

*can*'dog' > *canil*'kennel';

**new formation:** *tauro*'bull' > *tauril*'bull pen'

*Note:* Used with names of animals.

-ina

'substance made from, characterizing, related to, etc., ...' e.g.

*caseo*'cheese' > *caseina*'casein';

**new formation:** *globulo*'globule' > *globulina*'globulin'



*Note:* Used chiefly as technical (chemical) suffix.

-ismo

1. 'state or practice of being a ...' e.g.  
*despota* 'despot' > *despotismo* 'despotism';  
**new formation:** *gigante* 'giant' > *gigantismo* 'giantism';
2. [Med.] abnormal condition resulting from excess of ...' e.g.  
*plumbo* 'lead' > *plumbismo* 'plumbism, lead poisoning';  
**new formation:** *caffeina* 'cafein' > *caffeinismo* 'caffeinism';
3. 'doctrine or practice of, or concerned with ...' e.g.  
*Calvin* > *calvinismo* 'Calvinism';  
**new formation:** *Tito* > *titoismo* 'Titoism';
4. 'something characteristic of..., or of the language of ...' e.g.  
*hellen* 'Hellene' > *hellenismo* 'Hellenism';  
**new formation:** *Brooklyn* > *brooklynismo* 'Brooklynism'

*Note:* Often parallel to nouns in *-ista* and to verbs in *-isar* and subject to interpretation as derivative from *-isar* with the meaning 'action, process, practice, etc. of ...izing.' For derivatives from adjectives, see §141.

-ista

1. 'one who practices the art or science of ...' e.g.  
*biologia* 'biology' > *biologista* 'biologist'; *tympano* 'drum' > *tympanista* 'drummer, tympanist';  
**new formations:** *radiographia* 'radiography, x-ray photography' > *radiographista* 'x-ray photographer'; *saxophono* 'saxophone' > *saxophonista* 'saxophonist';
2. adherent of the doctrine of... e.g.  
*Calvin* > *calvinista* 'Calvinist'; *evolution* > *evolutionista* 'evolutionist';  
**new formation:** *Cesare* 'Caesar' > *cesarista* 'Caesarist'; *collaboration* > *collaborationista* 'collaborationist'

*Note:* Often parallel to nouns in *-ismo* and verbs in *-isar* and subject to interpretation as derivative from *-isar* with the meaning 'one who ...izes or believes in -izing.' In sense (1) synonym of *-ario* and *-ero*. For derivatives from adjectives, see §141.

-ita

1. 'inhabitant, citizen or native of ...' e.g.  
*Neapole* 'Naples' > *neapolita* 'Neapolitan';  
**new formation:** *Brooklyn* > *brooklynita* 'Brooklynitic';
2. member, adherent, or partisan of ...' e.g.  
*Jacobo* 'James' > *jacobita* 'jacobite';  
**new formation:** *Truman* > *trumanita* 'Trumanite'

*Note:* No distinction in form of male and female, but cf. the synonyms *-ano*, *-iano*. In sense (1) also synonym of *-ese*.

-ite

'rock or other mineral containing..., resembling ..., characterized by .., related to ...' e.g.  
*ligno* 'wood' > *lignite* 'lignite'; *meteo* 'meteor' > *meteorite* 'meteorite';

**new formation:** *Wyoming* > *wyomingite* 'Wyomingite'

*Note:* Used chiefly in technical (mineralogical) terms.

-itis

'inflammatory disease of the ...' e.g.

## 5. Word Building

---

*appendice*'appendix' > *appendicitis*'appendicitis';

**new formation:** *esophago*'esophagus' > *esophagitis*

*Note:* Used with names of parts of the body, chiefly in technical (medical) terms.

-oide

'something like, or shaped like ...' e.g.

*anthropo*'man' > *anthropoide*'anthropoid'; *globo*'globe' > *globoide*'globoid';

**new formations:** *entomo*'insect' > *entomoide*'entomoid'; *disco*'disk' > *discoide*'discoid'

*Note:* Used chiefly in technical terms. Often to be taken as substantivized form of adjectives in *-oide*.

-osis

'abnormal or diseased condition, state, or process of the..., caused by ..., characterized by . . ., etc.' e.g.

*neuro*'nerve' > *neurosis*; *tuberculo*'tubercle' *tuberculosis*;

**new formation:** *halito*'breath' > *halitosis*

*Note:* Used chiefly in technical (medical) words. The corresponding adjectives are formed in *-otic*.

### 5.2. Adjectives derived from nouns

#### §139

ADJECTIVES are derived FROM NOUNS by means of the suffixes listed below. On the use of nouns in apposition with quasi-adjectival functions, see §30 above.

-al

'pertaining to ..., characteristic of ..., etc.' e.g.

*natura*'nature' > *natural*;

**new formation:** *veneno*'poison' > *venenal*'poison, of poison'

*Note:* The most general and unspecific adjectival suffix. The variant *-ar* is to be preferred with nouns containing *l*; e.g.

*bussola*'compass' > *bussolar*'(of the) compass.' The type *interrogatorial* may be construed as a derivative from *interrogatorio*'interrogatory' or (with the suffix variant *-ial*) from *interrogator*. In patterns of this sort the variant *-ial* is to be preferred.

-an

'pertaining to ...!; esp. 'native of ...! e.g.

*urbe*'town' > *urban*; *Mohammed* > *mohammedan*'Mohammedan'; *Africa* > *african*'African';

**new formations:** *Tolstoi* > *tolstoian*'Tolstoyan'; *Asia* > *asian*'Asian'

*Note:* Used with names of places and persons. In the case of place names not ending in *-a* or *-o* as also of all names of persons, the euphonic variant *-ian* is to be preferred; e.g.

*Zamenhof* > *zamenhofian*'Zamenhofian'; but also *Canada* > *canadian*. The corresponding noun form is *-ano* (*-iano*).

-ari

'pertaining to ... , consisting of ... , etc.' e.g.

*legenda*'legend' > *legendari*'legendary'; *fragmento*'fragment' > *fragmentari*'fragmentary';

**new formation:** *vestimento* 'garment' > *vestmentari* 'garment'

*Note:* Functions as adjective corresponding to nouns in *-ario*, *-ero* and *-iero*. The variants *-er* and *-ier* may be used to correspond to nouns in *-ero* and *-iero* respectively.

-ate

'having a... or ...s' e.g.

*barba* 'beard' > *barbate* 'bearded'; *vertebra* > *vertebrate*;

**new formation:** *anello* 'ring' > *anellate* 'ringed'

*Note:* Coincides with past participle, in adjectival use, of verbs in *-ar*; e.g. *anellar* 'to ring' > *anellate* 'ringed.'

-esc

1. 'like, similar to, or characteristic of a ...' e.g. *gigante* 'giant' > *gigantesc* 'gigantic';

**new formation:** *elephante* 'elephant' > *elephantesc* 'elephantlike';

2. 'in the manner or style of ...' e.g.

*arabe* 'Arab' > *arabesc* 'arabesque';

**new formation:** *Chopin* > *chopinesc* 'Chopinesque'

-ese

'pertaining to ...'; esp. 'native to..., of ...'; e.g.

*China* > *chinese* 'Chinese';

**new formation:** *Ural* 'Urals' > *uralese* 'Uralian'

*Note:* Used with names of places. For nouns in *-ese*, see §138 above.

-ic

'of, pertaining to ..., characterized by ...' e.g.

*cubo* 'cube' > *cubic*; *nostalgia* > *nostalgic*;

**new formation:** *Bosporo* 'Bosporus' > *bosporic* 'of the Bosporus'

-ifere

'bearing, producing, yielding' e.g.

*cono* 'cone' > *conifere* 'coniferous'; *carbon* 'coal' > *carbonifere* 'carboniferous';

**new formation:** *fungo* 'fungus' > *fungifere* 'fungusbearing'

-ific

'making, causing ...' e.g.

*pace* 'peace' > *pacific*;

**new formation:** *lumine* 'light' > *luminific* 'light-producing'

-in

'of, pertaining to, etc., ...' e.g.

*alcali* [Chem.] > *alcalin* 'alkaline'; *can* 'dog' > *canin* 'canine';

**new formation:** *mure* 'mouse' > *murin* 'of mice, mouse'

*Note:* Used particularly with names of animals. The substantivized forms *-ino*, *-ina* may be used to designate animal offspring.

-ista

'pertaining to... ism or... ists' e.g.

*evolution* > *evolutionista* 'of evolution, evolutionist';

**new formation:** *inflation* > *inflationista* 'inflationary, inflationist'

*Note:* Not distinct from nouns in *-ista* used in apposition.

-oide

'like..., shaped like ...' e.g.

*negro* 'Negro' > *negroide* 'negroid';

## 5. Word Building

---

**new formation:** *disco*'disk' > *discoide*'discoid, discoidal'

*Note:* Used chiefly in technical terms. To be substantivized without change in form.

-ose

'having, abounding in . . ., characterized by ...' e.g.

*joco*'joke' > *jocose*; *religion* > *religiose*'religious';

**new formation:** *incendio*'destructive fire' > *incendiose*'abounding in destructive fires'

*Note:* -ion plus -ose > -iose.

-otic

'pertaining to ...osis' e.g.

*neurosis* and *neurotic*;

**new formation:** *thrombosis* and *thrombotic*

*Note:* Used in technical (medical) terms corresponding to (and derived from the base of) nouns in -osis.

### 5.3. Verbs derived from nouns and adjectives

#### §140

VERBS are derived FROM NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES by means of the simple verb ending -ar or its compounded forms -ificar and -isar (-ficar and -sar after -i-). The distinction of meaning in derived verbs of these three types is harder to define than to sense.

For new formations the following points are to be borne in mind: The ending -ar may be said to have no meaning of its own; it merely indicates the verbal nature of the derivative. The specific meaning to be associated with that verbal nature is to be clarified by other factors. To illustrate: that *guantar* (from *guanto*'glove') is not likely to suggest the ideas 'to render glovelike' (after the model of *acierar*'to render steel-like' from *aciero*'steel') or 'to slap with a glove' (after the model of *martellar*'to beat with a hammer' from *martello*'hammer') is not due to any signification of -ar but is simply a matter of common sense. New formations in -ar obtain their specific meaning through context, common sense, and often also through the simultaneous use of a prefix, as for instance in *afratrar* (from *fratre*'brother'), where *a-* suggests approximation so that the verb will mean 'to make a brother or brothers of,' or in *invinagrar* (from *vinagre*'vinegar'), where the prefix suggests immersion so that the verb will mean 'to put in vinegar.'

The meaning suggested by verb formations in -ificar is that of making a thing over into something it was not before. In one of its aspects the suffix -isar suggests likewise the idea of making but rather in the sense that a thing is made to assume a new state without losing its former identity. Thus *petrificar*'to petrify' suggests an action which makes something into a stone that was something else while *vaporisar*'to vaporize' suggests that a substance which does not change its identity is made into vapor. In new formations the distinction should be clearly observed. For instance, *papirificar*'to make into paper' (from *papiro*'paper') might have 'wood' as its object while *papirisar*'to make into paper' would apply possibly to the bark of a tree which remains what it was but begins to have the appearance of paper.

-ar

1. 'to make use of...; to apply, give, etc ... (to)' e.g.

*vulnere*'wound' > *vulnerar*'to wound';

**new formation:** *anello*'ring' > *anellar*'to ring, apply or give a ring to'; *garage* > *garagiar*'to keep or put in a garage, to garage';

2. 'to render ..., to make..., etc.' e.g.

*sic*'dry' > *siccar*'to dry, make dry';

**new formation:** *folle*'mad' > *follar*'to madden, drive mad'

*Note:* On compound verbs formed with prefixes and *-ar* see above and [§155](#), [§163](#).

-ificar

'to make, render...; to convert into ...' e.g.

*ample* > *amplificar*'to amplify'; *petra*'stone' > *petrificar*'to petrify'

**new formations:** *grasse*'fat' > *grassificar*'to fatten'; *glacie*'ice' > *glacificar*'to ice, convert into ice'

*Note:* When applied to nouns, *-ificar* can be construed as adjectival suffix *-ific* plus *-ar*; e.g.

*pace*'peace' plus *-ificar* or *pacific* plus *-ar* > *pacificar*'to pacify'

-isar

1. 'to make into ...' e.g. *pulvere*'powder' > *pulverisar*'to pulverize';

**new formation:** *emulsion* > *emulsionisar*'to emulsionize';

2. 'to apply...; to make use (of the principles) of .... etc.' e.g. *Pasteur* > *pasteurisar*'to pasteurize';

**new formation:** *collodio*'collodion' > *collodisar*'to collodionize';

3. 'to render ..., to make ...' e.g. *american* > *americanisar*'to Americanize';

**new formation:** *minime*'smallest' > *minimisar*'to minimize'

*Note:* Nouns in *-ismo* and *-ista* may often be construed as derived from verbs in *-isar* rather than from basic nouns or adjectives.

#### 5.4. Words derived from adjectives

##### §141

I.B.a.- NOUNS are derived FROM ADJECTIVES by means of the suffixes listed below. On adjectives used as pronouns or nouns, see [§40-§41](#) above.

-essa

'state or quality of being ...' e.g.

*polite* > *politessa*'politeness'; *ric*'rich' > *ricchezza*'wealth';

**new formation:** *apte*'apt' > *aptessa*'aptitude'

-ia

(pron '-ia)'state or quality of being ...' e.g.

*efficace*'effective' > *efficacia*'effectiveness';

**new formation:** *felice*'happy' > *felicia*'happiness'; *fraudente*'fraudulent' > *fraudentia*'fraudulence'

*Note:* Used chiefly with adjectives in *-nte*. The combination *-ntia* coincides with the postverbal noun suffix *-ntia*. See [§148](#) under *-antia*.

-ia

(pron '-ia)'state or quality of being ...' e.g.

*zelose*'jealous' > *zelosia*'jealousy';

## 5. Word Building

---

**new formation:** *brachycephale* 'brachycephalic' > *brachycephalia* 'brachycephalism'

*Note:* Used chiefly with technical compounds.

-ismo

- 'state or quality of being ...' e.g.  
*provincial* > *provincialismo* 'provincialism';  
**new formation:** *brutal* > *brutalismo* 'brutality';
  - 'doctrine or practice concerned with what is ...' e.g.  
*social* > *socialismo* 'socialism';  
**new formation:** *atonal* [Mus.] > *atonalismo* [Mus.] 'atonalism';
  - 'something characteristic of the... people or of their language' e.g.  
*german* 'German' > *germanismo* 'Germanism';  
**new formation:** *polynesian* 'Polynesian' > *polynesianismo* 'Polynesianism'
- Note:* For derivatives from nouns, see [§138](#).

-ista

'adherent of the doctrine or practice concerned with what is ...' e.g.

*social* > *socialista* 'socialist';

**new formation:** *atonal* [Mus.] > *atonalista* [Mus.] 'adherent of atonalism'

*Note:* For derivatives from nouns, see [§138](#).

-itate

'state or quality of being ...' e.g.

*regular* > *regularitate* 'regularity';

**new formation:** *cohesive* > *cohesivitate* 'cohesiveness'

*Note:* Synonym of *-itude*, but preferred when the base is already a derivative. In further derivation (not recommended for active use), *-itate* appears as *-it-* before suffixes beginning with *a*; e.g.

*autoritate* 'authority' plus *-ari* > *autoritari* 'authoritarian.'

-itude

'state or quality of being ...' e.g.

*certe* 'certain' > *certitude* 'certainty';

**new formation:** *emerite* 'emeritus' > *emeritude* 'emeritus status'

*Note:* Synonym of *-itate*. Extended to *-itudin-* in further derivation; e.g.

*latitude* *latitudinal*.

### §142

I.B.b.- The active derivation of ADJECTIVES FROM ADJECTIVES is limited to the use of one diminutive suffix and the formation of absolute superlatives in *-issime* treated in [§36](#) above. Note that every noun in *-ista* can function as an adjective. e.g. *socialista* 'socialist, socialistic.'

-ette

'somewhat..., pretty ...' e.g.

*belle* 'beautiful' > *bellette* 'pretty';

**new formation:** *blanc* 'white' > *blanchette* 'whitish'

### §143

I.B.c.- On the formation of [DERIVED ADVERBS](#) see [§45-§47](#) above.

## §144

I.B.d.- The derivation of VERBS FROM ADJECTIVES runs completely parallel to that of verbs from nouns. See [§140](#) above.

## 5.5. Words derived from verbs

## §145

The suffixes used in DERIVING NEW WORDS FROM VERBS are generally linked to the verbal stem by means of transition features which are not the same for all verbs nor for all suffixes.

It is customary to cite the transition features as part of the postverbal suffixes with the result that practically everyone of them appears under several variant forms (as *-ation*, *-ition*, *-ion*, etc.). Exceptions are the constant suffixes *-ada*, *-age*, and *-eria*. With all variable forms reduced to their non-variable portion, the postverbal suffixes are:

- *-ada*
- *-age*
- *-eria*
- *-nte*
- *-ntia*
- *-mento*
- *-bile*
- *-ion*
- *-ive*
- *-ura*
- *-or*
- *-ori*, *-orio*
- *-e*

## §146

Every verb may be said to have two distinct forms under which it can enter into a postverbal suffix derivative. The first of these combining forms or stems is always the infinitive less the infinitive endings *-ar*, *-er*, or *-ir*. The suffixes which combine with this stem are *-ada*, *-age*, *-eria*, *-nte*, *-ntia*, *-mento*, *-bile*. The last four of these require a "transition feature." In the case of verbs in *-ar*, it is always *-a-*; in the case of verbs in *-er*, it is *-i-* for *-mento* and *-bile* and *-e-* for *-nte* and *-ntia*; in the case of verbs in *-ir*, it is *-i-* for *-mento* and *-bile* and *-ie-* for *-nte* and *-ntia*. For illustrations, see [§152](#).

### §147

Thus the full forms of the postverbal suffixes which combine with the infinitive less the infinitive ending (first stem) are:

- *-ada*
- *-age*
- *-eria*
- *-ante*
- *-ente*
- *-iente*
- *-antia*
- *-entia*
- *-ientia*
- *-amento*
- *-imento*
- *-abile*
- *-ibile*

Under these forms the individual suffixes are treated below. Note that *-ante* and its variants are present participles and as such are treated in [§94](#) above.

### §148

The second combining form or stem is either irregular - in which case it is given in the Interlingua-English Dictionary (see, for instance, under *figer*, *verter*, *cognoscer*, etc.) - or results from the first stem by the addition of *-at-* in the case of verbs in *-ar* and or *-it-* in the case of verbs in *-er* and *-ir*. The suffixes which combine with the second stem are *-ion*, *-ive*, *-ura*, *-or*, *-ori*, *-orio*.

---

For a descriptive survey of irregular second stems, see [Appendix I](#).

**A collateral system of dealing with irregular stems** to be adopted or rejected systematically but not to be mixed haphazardly with the system outlined in the text- is based on a fourfold in lieu of a threefold grouping of verbs.

1. The groups with infinitives in *-ar* and *-ir* remain unaffected.
2. The group of verbs listed in the Interlingua-English Dictionary with infinitives ending in *-er* is subdivided in
  - a. infinitives which remain unaffected
  - b. infinitives in unstressed *-ere*

The group of verbs with infinitives in unstressed *-ere* coincides almost completely with those verbs which are listed in the Interlingua-English Dictionary (and described in [Appendix I](#)) as having infinitives in *-er* and an irregular second stem. When this system is



adopted, it follows (with the two qualifications given below) that all verbs in *-ere* have irregular second stems. To establish the complete new group of verbs in *-ere*, it must (a) be made to include a number of verbs which are listed in the Dictionary without an irregular second stem and (b) be reduced by some verbs which do appear in the Dictionary with an irregular stem.

(a) The group of verbs in *-ere* does include the following verbs which have no irregular second stem: *addere, appetere, arguere, congruere, in-* and *succumbere, edere* 'to eat,' *edere* 'to edit,' *essere, fremere, furere, lambere, molere, perdere, petere, rendere, strepere, tremere, vergere, vivere*, and their compounds.

(b) The group of verbs in *-ere* does not include the following verbs which do have irregular second stems: *censer, compler, deler, docer, ad-, co-, and inherer, indulger, luger, miscer, morder, mover, mulger, pender, posseder, rider, seder, as-, dis-, pre-, re-, sub-, obsider, sorber, sponder, suader, tener, tonder, torquer, torrer, vider*, and their compounds.

In regard to all derivatives the verbs in unstressed *-ere* follow the patterns described in the text for verbs in stressed *-er*. All past participles in *-ite* (whether from verbs in *-er* or *-ere*) are stressed on the third syllable from the end and are not affected by the collateral spelling discussed in §15h above.

#### §149

By linking the elements *-at-* and *-it-* with the suffixes listed, a survey of forms results in which the distinction between first and second stem need be maintained only for verbs with an irregular second stem. The forms are:

For regular verbs in <i>-ar</i> (added to simple stem)	For regular verbs in <i>-er</i> and <i>-ir</i> (added to simple stem)	For irregular verbs (added to second stem)
-ation	-ition	-ion
-ative	-itive	-ive
-atura	-itura	-ura
-ator	-itor	-or
-atori	-itori	-ori
-atorio	-itorio	-orio
-ate	-ite	-e

#### §150

*Note:* All verbs may be treated as regular with the result of doublets like *facere* 'to make' > *factor* or *facitor* 'maker'; *tendere* 'to stretch' > *tenditor* or *tensor* 'stretcher (one who stretches)'; etc. In new formations the regular variant is generally preferred. The suffix *-ate* and its variants form participial adjectives as treated in §95 above. The suffix *-bile* which combines regularly with the first stem, is joined to the irregular second stem when it ends in *-pt-*, *-st-*, *-s-*, *-ss-*, or *-x-*.

### §151

On the use of the full infinitive forms as nouns, see [§83](#) above.

### §152

Nouns and adjectives are derived from verbs by means of the suffixes listed below. The infinitive endings in parentheses following the suffix variants identify the class of regular verbs to which the use of a particular suffix is restricted. The suffix variants restricted in use to combinations with irregular second stems are explicitly identified as such.

-ada

n 'continued or prolonged action of...ing' e.g.  
*cavalcar*'to ride on horseback' > *cavalcada*'horseback ride'

**new formation:**

*carrer*'to run' > *currada*'running, run'

*Note:* For formations from nouns, see [§138](#). For synonyms and quasi-synonyms, see [§154](#).

-age

n 'action or process of ...ing' e.g.  
*acierar*'to plate with steel' > *acierage*'steel plating';

**new formations:**

*borrar*'to stuff' > *borrage*'(action of) stuffing';  
*contrafacar*'to counterfeit' > *contrafaciage*'counterfeiting'

*Note:* For formations from nouns, see [§138](#); spelled *-agi-* before *-a-* or *-o-* of additional suffix. For synonyms and quasi-synonyms, see [§154](#).

-eria

1. 'place where... is done' e.g.  
*distillar*'to distill' > *distilleria*'distillery';

**new formations:**

*blanchir*'to bleach' > *blancheria*'bleachery'; *pisca*'to fish' > *pischeria*'fishing place';

2. 'art, craft, trade, or practice of...ing; also: the product of such work' e.g.  
*brodar*'to embroider' > *broderia*'embroidery';

**new formation:**

*robar*'to rob' > *roberia*'robbery'

*Note:* For formations from nouns, see [§138](#). For synonyms and quasi-synonyms, see [§154](#).

-amento (-ar), -imento (-er, -ir)

n 'action or result of...ing' e.g.  
*arrangiar*'to arrange' > *arrangiamento*'arrangement';  
*abolir*'to abolish' > *abolimento*'abolishment';

**new formation:**

*fagottar*'to fagot, bind into bundles' > *fagottamento*'fagoting';  
*fulgir*'to flash' > *fulgimento*'flash, fulguration'

*Note:* For synonyms and quasi-synonyms, see [§154](#).

-ante (-ar), -ente (-er), -iente (-ir)

adj'...ing, that ...s' e.g.

*abundare*'to abound' > *abundante*'abounding, abundant';

*coherere*'to cohere, be coherent' > *coherente*'coherent';

*obedire*'to obey' > *obediente*'obedient';

**new formations:**

*florare*'to flower, to flourish' > *florante*'flowering, flourishing';

*subscribere*'to subscribe' > *subscribente*'subscribing';

*inhibire*'to inhibit' > *inhibente*'inhibiting'

*Note:* Identical with present participle. See §93, especially the note.

-ante (-ar), -ente (-er), -iente (-ir)

n 'one who or that which is...ing or ...s' e.g.

*brillare*'to shine' > *brillante*'brilliant';

*studere*'to study' > *studente*'student';

*emollire* [Med.] 'to soften, to mollify' > *emolliente*'emollient';

**new formations:**

*formare*'to form' > *formante*'formant';

*dirigere*'to direct, guide, manage' > *dirigente*'director conductor, manager';

*inhibire*'to inhibit' > *inhibente*'inhibiter, inhibitor'

*Note:* In form identical with the present participle of which it is a substantivization.

See §93, especially the note. In meaning akin to -ator etc. but stressing the cut progress of the action.

-antia (-ar), -entia (-er), -ientia (-ir)

n 'state or quality of... ing' e.g.

*tolerare*'to tolerate' > *tolerantia*'tolerance';

*adolescere*'to grow up, to become adolescent' > *adolescentia*'adolescence';

*experire*'to try' > *experientia*'experience';

**new formations:**

*irradiare*'to irradiate' > *irradiantia*'irradiance';

*ardere*'to burn' > *ardentia*'ardency';

*incipere*'to begin' > *incipientia*'incipience, incipieny'

*Note:* Identical in form with derivative in -ia from the present participle. See §93, especially the note, and §141.

-abile (-ar), -ibile (-er, -ir)

adj 'that can be...ed; that is worthy to be...ed' e.g.

*observare*'to observe' > *observabile*'observable';

*admirare*'to admire' > *admirabile*'admirable';

*legere*'to read' > *legibile*'readable, legible';

*audire*'to hear' > *audibile*'audible';

**new formations:**

*exaggerare*'to exaggerate' > *inexaggerabile*'inexaggerable';

*financiare*'to finance' > *financiabile*'financeable, that can be financed';

*finire*'finish' > *finibile*'finishable';

*frangere*'to break' > *frangibile*'frangible, breakable'

In the case of verbs which have an irregular second stem, the form -ibile is used with that stem when it ends in -s-, -pt-, -st-, or -x-. e.g.

*percipere* (-cip-/-cept-) 'to perceive' > *perceptibile*'perceptible';

**new formation:**

*tondere* (tond-/tons-) 'to cut' > *intonsibile*'uncuttable.' See also §150 above.

-ation (-ar), -ition (-er, -ir)

## 5. Word Building

---

n 'action or result of...ing' e.g.

*installar*'to install' > *installation*

*addar*'to add' > *addition*

*audir*'to hear' > *audition*

**new formations:**

*atomisar*'to atomize' > *atomisation*'atomization'

*amollir*'to soften' > *amollition*'softening'

In the case of verbs which have an irregular second stem, the short variant *-ion* is used with that stem. e.g.

*convenir* (-ven-/-vent-) 'to convene' > *convention*

**new formations:**

*derelinquer* (-linqu-/-lict-) 'to forsake' > *dereliction*

*consentir* (-sent-/-sens-) 'to consent' > *consension*'consenting, consent.'

*Note:* For synonyms and quasi-synonyms, see [§154](#).

-ative (-ar), -itive (-er, -ir)

adj

1. 'tending to ...' e.g.

*sedar*'to soothe' > *sedative*

*depler*'deplete' > *depletive*

*fugir*'to flee' > *fugitive*

**new formations:**

*isolar*'to isolate' > *isolative*

*moner*'to admonish' > *monitive*'admonitive'

*finir*'to finish' > *finitive*'concluding'

2. 'having the function of...ing' e.g.

*demonstrar*'to dentrate' > *demonstrative*

*compler*'to complete' > *completive*

*partir*'to part, divide' > *partitive*

**new formations:**

*alligar*'to bind' > *alligative*'binding'

*circumjacer*'to surround' > *circumjacitive*'surrounding';

*guarnir*'to decorate, trim' > *guarnitive*'decorative'

In the case of verbs which have an irregular second stem, the short variant *-ive* is used with that stem. e.g.

*reciper* (-cip-/-cept-) 'to receive' > *receptive*

*defender* (-fend-/-fens-) 'to defend' > *defensive*

**new formations:**

*eveller* (-vell-/-vuls-) 'to tear out' > *evulsive*'tending to tear out';

*exhaurir* (-haur-/-haust-) 'to exhaust' > *exhaustive*

-ator (-at), -itor (-er, -ir)

n 'one who, or that which ...s' e.g.

*administrar*'to administrate' > *administrator*

*accelerar*'to accelerate' > *accelerator*

*consumer*'to consume' > *consumitor*'consumer'

*expedir*'to send off' > *expeditor*'sender'

**new formations:**

*ponderar*'to ponder' > *ponderator*'ponderer'

*siccar*'to dry' > *siccator*'drier'

*urger*'to urge' > *urgitor*'urger'

*compartir*'to partition' > *compartitor*'partitioner'

In the case of verbs which have an irregular second stem, the short variant *-or* is used with that stem. e.g.

*distribuer* (-tribu-/-tribut-) 'to distribute' > *distributor*

**new formations:**

*franger* (-frang-/-fract-) 'to break' > *fractor*'breaker'

*exhaurir* (-haur-/-haust-) > *exhaustor*

*Note:* In meaning akin to *-ante* etc. which is to be preferred In the case of verbs in *-escer*. The corresponding feminine form is *-atrice* etc.

-atori (-at), -itori (-er, -ir)

adj 'pertaining to, or serving for, the action of...ing' e.g.

*circular*'to circulate' > *circulatori*'circulatory'

*merer*'to merit' > *meritori*'meritorious'

*transir*'to go across' > *transitori*'transitory';

**new formations:**

*ventilar*'to ventilate' > *ventilatori*'ventilatory'

*coercer*'to coerce' > *coercitori*'coercive'

In the case of verbs which have an irregular second stem, the short variant *-ori* is used with that stem. e.g.

*deluder* (-lud-/-lus-) 'to delude' > *delusori*'delusory'

**new formations:**

*sentir* (-sent-/-sens-) 'to feel' > *sensori*'sensory'

*accender* (-cend-/-cens-) 'to light, ignite' > *accensori*'lighting, igniting'

*Note:* Frequently serving as the general adjective relating to nouns in *-ion*.

-atorio (-ar), -itorio (-er, -ir)

n 'place where, installation or instrument with which, ...ing is done' e.g.

*laborar*'to work' > *laboratorio*'laboratory'

*abatter*'to knock or cast down' > *abattitorio*'slaughterhouse'

*audir*'to hear' > *auditorio*'auditorium'

**new formations:**

*fumar*'to fume, smoke' > *fumatorio*'smoke house, smoking room, etc.'

*biber*'to drink' > *bibitorio*'drinking place';

*blanchir*'to bleach' > *blanchitorio*'bleaching ground'

In the case of verbs which have an irregular second stem, the short variant *-orio* is used with that stem. e.g.

*scriber* (-scrib-/-script-) 'to write' > *scriptorio*'writing desk'

**new formation:**

*calefacer* (-fac-/-fact-) 'to heat' > *calefactorio*'heating plant'

-atrice (-ar), -itrice (-er, ir)

n 'a woman who ...s' e.g.

*imperar*'to rule over' > *imperatrice*'empress'

*consumer*'to consume' > *consumitrice*'(woman) consumer'

*expedir*'to send off' > *expeditrice*'(woman) sender'

**new formations:**

*crear*'to create' > *creatrice*'creatress'

*moner*'to admonish' > *monitrice*'(woman) admonisher'

*audir*'to hear' > *auditrice*'(woman) hearer'

## 5. Word Building

---

In the case of verbs which have an irregular second stem, the short variant *-rice* is used with that stem, provided it ends in *-t*. With other irregular stems, the formation is to be avoided. - e.g.

*ager* (ag-/act-) 'to act' > *actrice* 'actress'

**new formation:**

*sarcir* (sarc-/sart-) 'to mend' > *sartrice* 'dressmaker, seamstress'

*Note:* Synonym of the corresponding male form, *-ator* etc., modified by the suffix *-essa*.

-atura (*-ar*), -itura (*-er*, *-ir*)

n 'action or result of ...ing' e.g.

*flar* 'to spin' > *filatura* '(act of) spinning'

*crear* 'to create' > *creatura* 'creature'

*vestir* 'to dress' > *vestitura* 'clothing'

**new formations:**

*martellar* 'to hammer' > *martellatura* 'hammering'

*nutrir* 'to nourish' > *nutritura* '(act of) nourishing, nutrition'

In the case of verbs which have an irregular second stem, the short variant *-ura* is used with that stem. e.g.

*miscer* (misc- / mixt-) 'to mix' > *mixtura* 'mixture'

*aperir* (-per- / -pert-) 'to open' > *apertura* 'opening'

**new formations:**

*tanger* (tang- / tact-) 'to touch' > *tactura* 'touching'

*sarcir* (sarc- / sart-) 'to mend' > *sartura* 'mending, repair'

*Note:* For synonyms and quasi-synonyms, see [§154](#).

-ate (*-ar*), -ite (*-er*, *-ir*)

adj

1. '...ed, being...ed' e.g.

*concentrar* 'to concentrate' > *concentrate* 'concentrated'

*addormir* 'to put to sleep' > *addormite* 'asleep'

*posseder* 'to possess' > *possedite* 'possessed'

**new formations:**

*civilisar* 'to civilize' > *civilisate* 'civilized'

*perder* 'to lose' > *perdite* 'lost'

*prohibir* 'to prohibit, forbid' > *prohibite* 'prohibited, forbidden'

2. '...ed, having ...ed' e.g.

*mediar* 'to mediate' > *mediate* 'mediate'

*tacer* 'to be silent' > *tacite* 'tacit'

**new formations:**

*germinar* 'to germinate' > *germinate* 'germinated'

*jacer* 'to lie' > *jacite* 'lying down'

*cader* 'to fall' > *cadite* 'fallen'

*faller* 'to fail' > *fallite* 'failed, that has failed'

In the case of verbs which have an irregular second stem, the short variant *-e* is used with that stem. e.g.

*confunder* (-fund-/-fus-) 'to confuse' > *confuse* 'confused'

**new formation:**

*scriber* (scrib- / script-) 'to write' > *scripte* 'written.'

*Note:* Identical with the past participle. See [§95-§97](#).

## §153

There are five POSTVERBAL ADJECTIVE SUFFIXES.

-ante (-ente, -iente)

expressing that a thing or person is performing the action of the verb (*causar - causante* 'causing': *le factor causante le accidente* 'the factor which causes the accident')

-ative (-itive, -ive)

expressing that a thing or person tends to, is apt to, etc. perform the action of the verb (*causar - causative* 'causative': *le distinction de plure factores causative* 'the distinction of several factors which tend to cause, are likely or apt to cause a certain result')

-atori (-itori, -ori)

expressing that a thing or person is somehow related to, or connected with, the action of the verb (*causar - causatori* 'causatory': *le aspecto causatori del problema* 'the aspect of the problem which has to do with how it was caused');

-ate (-ite, -e)

expressing that the action, no longer in progress, was applied to a thing or person (*causar - causate* 'caused': *le accidente causate per su neglecto* 'the accident which was caused by his negligence, which his negligence caused');

-abile (-ibile)

expressing that the action can or could or ought to be applied to a thing or person (*causar - causabile* 'causable': *miraculos es causabile solamente per fortias supernatural* 'miracles can be caused only by supernatural forces').

## §154

Of the POSTVERBAL NOUN SUFFIXES several express more or less distinct aspects of the action of the verb.

1. -ada
2. -age
3. -eria
4. -amento (-imento)
5. -ation (-ition, -ion)
6. -atura (-itura, -ura); to which may be added
7. -antia (-entia, -ientia) and
8. the ending of the infinitive used as a noun, -ar (-er, -ir).

Their distinction is often a matter of nuances emphasized, and in a good many instances one formation may take the place of another without appreciable shift of meaning. The use of all of them with one and the same verb can hardly be achieved without artifice but may serve to define their individual connotations of value.

With *procurar* 'to procure' as a random example, the resulting postverbal action nouns are:

1. *procurada*
2. *procurage*

## 5. Word Building

---

3. *procureria*
  4. *procuramento*
  5. *procuration*
  6. *procuratura*
  7. *procurantia*
  8. *procurar*
- 
1. *-ada* expresses action done and viewed as a whole, either in its results or as one sweeping continuity. It lends itself readily to being used in the plural. *Procurada* might signify a procurement spree referred to with emphasis on its success or yield.
  2. *-age* expresses action done or being done and viewed as a single achievement or as a whole series of such. It tends to remain sufficiently abstract to resist pluralization. *Procurage* might signify the procedure of procuring something with implied emphasis on the effort, expense, etc. involved or the occupation of a person concerned with procuring things, such occupation being viewed as consisting of a series of procurage procedures.
  3. *-eria* expresses action viewed as part of a business, occupation, field of endeavor, etc. involving as well the corresponding production either as a whole or in individual pieces. *Procureria* might signify the practice (with all its implications) of a person whose business it is to procure things. This aside from the more crystallized meaning of the place of business of such a person.
  4. *-amento* expresses action viewed with reference to its effects and results. *Procuramento* might signify procurement as an act or action and the endeavor to procure something.
  5. *-ation* expresses action or an action viewed as a tangible process which can be repeated and hence referred to in the plural. *Procuration* means procuring as a definite performance.
  6. *-atura* expresses action viewed with reference to its individual product and hence that product itself as well as, by extension, the activity of which the individual product may stand as a symbol. *Procuratura* might signify the fact of procuring as well as an organization or office set up to procure supplies for certain requirements.
  7. *-antia* expresses action viewed as the state of the agent performing it. *Procurantia* might mean procuring as an assignment which makes certain demands upon the person involved.
  8. *-ar* expresses action as action, that is, viewed as an abstract phenomenon which cannot be pluralized. *Procurar* signifies procuring.

*Note:* The logical distinction between the several postverbal action nouns cannot be carried very far. In practice the choice of one or the other formation is often governed by non-logical considerations which are not therefore less vital. Their import and effect coincide, broadly speaking, with English usage.

### 5.6. Compounding by means of prefixes - general

§155

The term COMPOUNDING is here used to refer to word building by the combination of one word and a prefix or of two full-fledged words. In either case the prefixed portion of the



compound modifies the second element which determines the part of speech of the resulting formation. Note that the second element often establishes itself as representing a given part of speech only through the compounding process. e.g. in *rehabilitar* 'to rehabilitate,' the prefix seems to modify a verb *habilitar* 'to habilitate' but it actually establishes itself directly on the basis of *habile* 'able.'

In the following surveys this phenomenon has been considered normal and therefore not in need of special comment. See also §163 below.

### §156

It is convenient to distinguish between GENERAL and TECHNICAL PREFIXES. The distinction follows no hard-and-fast rule but results from the fact (which seems to be characteristic of all modern languages and is certainly no distinctive feature of Interlingua) that scientific terminologies operate with prefixes which are rarely found in the general everyday vocabulary.

### §157

The following GENERAL PREFIXES are used to modify nouns, adjectives, and/or verbs as indicated in every instance:

ad-

(in verbs) 'to, toward, into' e.g.

*judicar* 'to judge' > *adjudicar* 'to adjudge'

*currer* 'to run' > *accurrer* 'to come running'

*costa* 'coast' > *accostar* 'to accost'

**new formations:**

*rider* 'to laugh' > *arrider* 'to laugh at'

*Note:* By extension of the meaning 'motion toward,' ad- expresses also 'change into,' 'increase of intensity,' etc. e.g.

*clar* 'clear' > *acclarar* 'to make clearer, clarify'

- Subject to assimilation before consonants other than *d*, *h*, *j*, *m*, and *v*.

ante-

(in nouns, adjectives, and verbs) 'preceding in time or space' e.g.

*camera* 'room' > *antecamera* 'anteroom'

*penultime* 'penultimate' > *antepenultime* 'antepenultimate'

*diluvio* 'deluge' > *antediluvian*

*poner* 'to place' > *anteponer* 'to prepose'

**new formations:**

*eternitate* 'eternity' > *anteeternitate* 'ante-eternity'

*margine* 'margin' > *antemarginal* [Bot.]

*arar* 'to plow' > *antearar* 'to plow before hand (preliminary to the real plowing)'

*Note:* Synonym of *pre-*. Antonym of *post-*.

anti-

(in nouns and adjectives) 'opposed to, against; opposite' e.g.

*arctic* > *antarctic*

*papa* 'Pope' > *antipapa* 'antipope'

## 5. Word Building

---

### **new formations:**

*idealista* 'idealist' > *antiidealista* 'anti-idealist'

*Freud* > *antifreudian* 'anti-Freudian'

*Note:* The variant *ant-* (not in active use) appears before vowels and *h*, e.g.

*helminthe* 'intestinal worm' > *anthelminthic* 'anthelmintic, vermifuge.' Antonym of *pro-*.

### auto-

(in nouns and adjectives) 'self' e.g.

*biographia* 'biography' > *autobiographia* 'autobiography'

*mobile* 'mobile' > *automobile* 'self-propelling, automobile'

### **new formation:**

*analyse* 'analysis' > *autoanalyse* 'autoanalysis'

*Note:* The variant *aut-* (not in active use) appears before vowels, e.g.

*-onym* 'name' > *autonymo* 'autonym.'

### circum-

(in verbs and adjectives) 'about, around' e.g.

*navigar* 'to navigate' > *circumnavigar* 'to circumnavigate'

*polo* 'pole' > *circumpolar*

*vicin* 'neighboring' > *circumvicin* 'circumjacent'

### **new formation:**

*zenit* 'zenith' > *circumzenital* [Meteorol.] 'circumzenithal'

*Note:* The variant *circu-* (not in active use) appears before *i*, e.g.

*ir* 'to go' > *circuir* 'to go around, circuit.'

### co-

(in nouns and adjectives) 'joint, fellow' e.g.

*national* > *conational* 'from the same country, conational'

*hereditario* 'heir' > *cohereditario* 'coheir'

### **new formations:**

*naufrago* 'shipwrecked person' > *conaufrago* 'fellow shipwrecked person'

*ideal* > *coidealista* 'adherent of the same ideal'

*Note:* Coincides with *co-*, a variant of *con-* used before vowels and *h*.

### con-

(in nouns, adjectives, and verbs) 'with, together, jointly, mutually' e.g.

*matre* 'mother' > *commatre* 'godmother'

*latere* 'side' > *collateral*

*temporanea* 'temporal' > *contemporanea* 'contemporaneous, contemporary'

*exister* 'to exist' > *coexister* 'to coexist'

*religion* > *conreligionario* 'co-religionist'

### **new formations:**

*generic* > *congeneric*

*fixar* 'to fix' > *confixar* 'to confix, fasten together'

*partitario* 'partisan, adherent of a party' > *compartitario* 'adherent of the same party'

*Note:* Appears as *co-* before *h* and vowels; *col-* before *l*; *com-* before *b*, *m*, *p*; *cor-* before *r* the variant *co-* coincides with the prefix *co-* above.

### contra-

(in nouns and verbs) 'against, opposing; counter or contrary to' e.g.

*balancia* 'balance' > *contrabalancia* 'counterbalance'

*dicer* 'to say' > *contradicer* 'to contradict'

**new formations:**

*manifesto* > *contramainfesto* 'countermnifesto'

*fluer* 'to flow' > *contrafluer* 'to counterflow'

dis-

(in nouns, adjectives, and verbs)

1. 'apart, separately; divided, scattered' e.g.  
*rumper* 'to break' > *disrumper* 'to disrupt'

**new formation:**

*jacer* 'to throw' > *disjicer* 'to scatter about'

2. 'not..., contrary or opposite of' e.g.  
*contente* 'content, contented' > *discontente* 'discontent, discontented'  
*harmonia* 'harmony' > *disharmonia* 'disharmony'

**new formations:**

*credentia* 'belief' > *discredentia* 'disbelief'

*acido* 'acid' > *disacidificar* 'to disacidify'

*Note:* In sense (2) synonym of *non-* and *in-*.

ex-

(in nouns) 'former' e.g.

*presidente* 'president' > *ex-presidente* 'ex-president'

**new formation:**

*convicto* 'convict' > *ex-convicto* 'ex-convict'

*Note:* Preferably set off by hyphen.

extra-

1. (in nouns, adjectives, and verbs) 'outside; outside the scope of' e.g.  
*dorso* 'back' > *extradorso* [Arch.] 'extrados'

*muro* 'wall' > *extramural*

*vaso* '(blood) vessel' > *extravasas* [Anat.] 'to extravasate'

**new formation:**

*lege* 'law' > *extralegal*

2. (in adjectives) 'highly, unusually, very' e.g.

*fin* 'fine' > *extrafin* 'extra-fine, superfine'

**new formation:**

*longe* 'long' > *extralonge* 'extra-long'

*Note:* In sense (1) antonym of *intra-*.

gran-

(in names of kinship) 'grand-, great-' e.g.

*patre* 'father' > *granpatre* 'grandfather'

*amita* 'aunt' > *granamita* 'great-aunt'

**new formation:**

*papa* > *granpapa* 'grandpa'

*Note:* For further reduplication, the prefix *pro-* is available; e.g.

'great-great-aunt' *progranamita*.

in-

1. (in verbs) 'in, into,' e.g.

*ducer* 'to lead' > *inducer* 'to induce'

**new formation:**

*capsula* 'capsule' > *incapsular* 'to incapsulate, enclose a capsule'

*Note:* Appears as *il-* before *l*; *im-* before *b*, *m*, and *p*; *ir-* before *r*; expresses

## 5. Word Building

---

position in or upon, motion into, change into, etc. The synonym *en-* occurs in technical words, §158.

- (in nouns and adjectives) 'not...; lacking; lack of' e.g.

*action* > *inaction*

*regular* > *irregular*

**new formation:**

*disciplina* 'discipline' > *indisciplina* 'indiscipline'

*Note:* Appears as *i-* before *gn*; *il-* before *l*; *im-* before *b, m, p*; *ir-* before *r*. Synonym of *dis-* and *non-*.

inter-

(in nouns, adjectives, and verbs) 'between, among' e.g.

*linear* 'to line' > *interlinear* 'to interline'

*acto* 'act of a play' > *interacto* 'entr'acte'

*maxilla* 'jawbone' > *intermaxiliar* 'intermaxillary'

**new formation:**

*racia* 'race' > *interracial*

intra-

(in adjectives) 'inside, within' e.g. *venose* 'venous' > *intravenose* 'intravenous' **new**

**formation:** *pelvic* > *intrapelvic* [Anat.] *Note:* Antonym of *extra-*.

intro-

(in verbs) 'inwards, to the inside' e.g.

*ducer* 'to lead, conduct' > *introducer* 'to introduce'

**new formation:**

*suger* 'to suck' > *introsuger* 'to suck in'

*Note:* Specific formations may be given antonyms in *extro-*; e.g. *introversion*;

*extroversion*

mis-

(in verbs) 'badly, wrongly' e.g.

*interpretar* 'to interpret' > *misinterpretar* 'to misinterpret'

**new formation:**

*nominar* 'to name' > *misnominar* 'to misname'

non-

(in nouns and adjectives) 'not . . ., lack or absence of' e.g.

*conformista* 'conformist' > *nonconformista* 'nonconformist'

*senso* 'sense' > *nonsenso* 'nonsense'

**new formations:**

*cyclic* > *noncyclic usage* 'use, usage' > *nonusage* 'disuse'

*Note:* Synonym of *dis-* and *in-*.

per-

- (in verbs) 'through, throughout' e.g.

*forar* 'to drill, bore' > *perforar* 'to perforate'

**new formation:**

*vader* 'to go' > *pervader* 'to pervade'

- 'thoroughly; extremely, very' e.g.

*venir* 'to come' > *pervenir* 'to arrive, succeed in arriving'

**new formation:**

*leger* 'to read' > *perleger* 'to read thoroughly'

*Note:* In sense (1) synonym of *trans-*. Also used as a technical prefix with chemical

nouns and adjectives. e.g.

*oxydo*'oxide (= compound containing oxygen)' > *peroxydo*'peroxide (= compound containing the maximum of oxygen)

**new formation:**

*boric* > *perboric*

post-

(in nouns, adjectives, and verbs) 'behind, after in time, location, or order' e.g.

*poner*'to put, lay' > *postponer*'to postpone, delay'

*glacie*'ice' > *postglacial*

**new formations:**

*pagar*'to pay' > *postpagar*'to pay in arrears'

*impressionista*'impressionist' > *postimpressionista*'postimpressionist'

*Note:* Antonym of *pre-* (and *ante-*).

pre-

(in nouns, adjectives, and verbs) 'before in time, position or rank' e.g.

*dominar*'to dominate' > *predominar*'to predominate'

*historia*'history' > *prehistoria*'prehistory'

*matur*'mature' > *prematuro*'premature'

**new formations:**

*gustar*'to taste; to enjoy' > *pregustar*'to foretaste'

*newtonian*'Newtonian' > *prenewtonian*'pre-Newtonian'

*Note:* Synonym of *ante-*, antonym of *post-*.

pro-

- (in nouns and adjectives) 'in favor of, on the side of' e.g.

*semita*'Semite' > *prosemitic*'pro-Semitic'

*german*'German' > *progerman*'pro-German'

- (in verbs) 'forward, forth' e.g.

*longe*'long' > *prolongar*'to prolong'

**new formation:**

*traher*'to draw, drag' > *protraher*'to protract'

*Note:* In sense (1) antonym of *anti-*. For use in names of kinship, see *gran* above.

re-

(in verbs)

- 'back, backwards' e.g.

*flecter*'to bend' > *reflecter*'to reflect'

**new formation:**

*lancear*'to hurl, fling' > *relancear*'to fling back'

- 'again' e.g.

*nove*'new' > *renovar*'to renew'

**new formation:**

*colonisar*'to colonize' > *recolonisar*'to recolonize'

*Note:* In sense (1) synonym of the more explicit *retro-*.

retro-

(in verbs) 'back, backwards' e.g.

*ceder*'to cede' > *retroceder*'to retrocede'

**new formation:**

*ducer*'to lead, conduct' > *retroducer*'to lead back'

*Note:* Synonym of the less explicit *re-*. Specific formations may be given antonyms in

## 5. Word Building

---

*pro-*; e.g.

*retrocession*: *procession*.

sub-

(in nouns, adjectives, and verbs)

1. 'under, underneath' e.g.

*lingua* 'tongue' > *sublingual* [Anat.]

**new formation:**

*currente* 'current' > *subcurrente* 'undercurrent';

2. 'subordinate; subdivision of' e.g.

*division* > *subdivision*

**new formation:**

*chef* 'head, chief' > *subchef* 'subchief; assistant manager'

3. 'slightly, slight' e.g.

*bullir* 'to boil' > *subbullir* 'to simmer'

**new formation:**

*inflammation* [Med.] > *subinflammation* [Med.]

*Note:* Subject to assimilation before *c, f, g, m, p, r*. Antonym of *super-*.

super-

(in nouns, adjectives, and verbs)

1. 'over, above' e.g.

*poner* 'to place' > *superponer* 'to superimpose,'

*scarpa* 'shoe' > *superscarpa* 'overshoe'

**new formation:**

*collar* 'to paste' > *supercollar* 'to paste over'

2. 'very; excessively, too much' e.g.

*pagar* 'to pay' > *superpagar* 'to overpay'

**new formation:**

*critic* 'critical' > *supercritic* 'overcritical'

*Note:* Antonym of *sub-*.

trans-

(in nouns, adjectives, and verbs)

1. 'beyond, across; surpassing' e.g.

*portar* 'to carry' > *transportar* 'to transport'

*Alpes* 'Alps' > *transalpin* 'transalpine'

*ration* 'reason' > *transrational*

**new formation:**

*uranium* > *transuranic*

2. 'through, across' e.g.

*parer* 'to appear' > *transparer* 'to show through'

**new formation:**

*luminar* 'light' > *transluminar* 'to shine through'

*Note:* In sense (1) synonym of *ultra-*, in sense (2) of *per-*.

ultra-

(in nouns, adjectives, and verbs) 'beyond' e.g.

*passar* 'to pass' > *ultrapassar* 'to go beyond'

*violette* 'violet' > *ultraviolette* 'ultraviolet'

**new formations:**

*micrometro* 'micrometer' > *ultramicrometro* 'ultramicrometer'

*stella*'star' > *ultrastellar*

Note: Synonym of *per-*.

vice-

(in nouns)'one who takes the place of' e.g.

*rege*'king' > *vicerege*'viceroy'

**new formation:**

*director* > *vicedirector*

## 5.7. Compounding by means of prefixes - technical

§158

The following technical prefixes are used to modify nouns and adjectives:

a-

'not...; without . . ., lacking ...' e.g.

*esthesia* > *anesthesia*

*gnostic*'relating to knowledge' > *agnostic*

**new formation:**

*nocive*'harmful' > *anocive*'innocuous'

Note: The variant *an-* appears before *h* and vowels. Cf. the nontechnical synonyms *in-* and *non-*.

amphi-

1. 'both, on both sides' e.g.

*bio*'life' > *amphibie*'amphibious'

2. 'around, about' e.g.

*theatro*'theater' > *amphitheatro*'amphitheater'

**new formation:**

*nucleo*'nucleus' > *amphinucleo* [Biol.] 'amphinucleus'

ana-

'again' e.g.

*baptismo*'baptism' > *anabaptismo*'anabaptism'

**new formation:**

*genese*'genesis' > *anagenese* [Physiol.] 'anagenesis'

Note: Cf. the nontechnical synonym *re-*.

apo-

1. 'off, away' e.g.

*geo*'earth' > *apogee*'apogean'

**new formation:**

*trachea*'windpipe' > *apotracheal*

2. [Chem.] 'formed from, related to' e.g.

*morphina*'morphine' > *apomorphina*'apomorphine'

**new formation:**

*quinina*'quinine' > *apoquinina*'apoquinine'

cata-

1. 'down, downwards' e.g.

*rhino*'nose' > *catarrhin* [Zool.] 'catarrhine'

**new formation:**

## 5. Word Building

---

*phyllo*- 'leaf' > *cataphyllo* [Bot.] 'cataphyll'

2. 'against; reflected' e.g.

*-optro-* > *catoptric* 'catoptric'

**new formation:**

*acustica* 'acoustics' > *catacustica* [Phys.] 'catacoustics'

*Note:* The variant *cat-* appears before *h* and vowels.

dia-

1. 'through' e.g.

*metro* 'measure' > *diametro* 'diameter'

**new formation:**

*nodo* 'knot' > *dianodal* [Math.]

2. 'away, apart' e.g.

*stas-* '(act of) standing' > *diastase* 'diastasis'

**new formation:**

*magnetic* > *diamagnetic*

*Note:* The variant *di-* appears before vowels. Cf. the nontechnical synonyms *trans-* and *per-*.

dys-

'bad, badly, not well' e.g.

*pepsia* 'digestion' > *dyspepsia*

**new formation:**

*genese* 'genesis' > *dysgenese* 'difficulty in breeding, dysgenesis'

*Note:* Cf. the nontechnical synonym *mis-*.

ecto-

'outside, external' e.g.

*derma* (in compounds) 'skin' > *ectoderma* [Zool.] 'ectoderm'

**new formations:**

*cornea* 'cornea' > *ectocornea*

*cranio* 'cranium' > *ectocranial*

*Note:* The variant *ect-* appears before vowels. Cf. the nontechnical synonym *extra-*.

en-

'in, into' e.g.

*demo* [Gr. Antiq.] 'demos' > *endemia* [Med.] 'endemic'

**new formation:**

*derma* > *endermic* [Med.]

*Note:* The variant *em-* appears before *b*, *m*, *p*, *ph*. Cf. the nontechnical synonym *in-*.

endo-

'within' e.g.

*gamo-* 'marriage' > *endogame* 'endogamous'

*osmose* 'osmosis' > *endosmose* 'endosmosis'

**new formation:**

*phag-* 'to eat' > *endophage* 'endophagous, eating fellow-tribesmen'

*Note:* The variant *end-* appears before vowels.

ento-

'within, inside' e.g.

*-zoon* 'animal' > *entozoon* 'entozoen, intestinal parasite'

**new formation:**

*ot-* 'ear' > *entotic* 'entotic, pertaining to the interior of the ear'



*Note:* The variant *ent-* appears before vowels.

epi-

'on, upon' e.g.

*-tapho-* 'tomb' > *epitaphio* 'epitaph'

**new formation:**

*gastro* 'abdomen, stomach' > *epigastric*

*Note:* The variant *ep-* appears before *h* and vowels.

exo-

'without, outside' e.g.

*gamo-* 'marriage' > *exogame* 'exogamous'

*osmose* 'osmosis' > *exosmose* 'exosmosis'

**new formation:**

*phag-* 'to eat' > *exophage* 'exophagous, practicing cannibalism outside the tribe'

*Note:* The variant *ex-* appears before vowels.

hyper-

'over; beyond; too much' e.g.

*critic* 'critical' > *hypercritic* 'hypercritical'

*tension* > *hypertension*

**new formation:**

*dimension* > *hyperdimensional*

*Note:* Cf. the nontechnical synonym *super-*.

hypo-

1. 'below, beneath, under' e.g.

*derma* > *hypodermatic* 'hypodermic'

**new formation:**

*carpo-* 'fruit' > *hypocarpio* 'hypocarp';

2. 'to a lower degree; somewhat' e.g.

*troph-* 'nourishment' > *hypotrophia* 'hypotrophy'

**new formation:**

*esthesia* > *hypoesthesia*

3. [Chem.] 'indicating a lower state of oxidation, or a lower position in a series of compounds' e.g.

*phosphato* 'phosphate' > *hypophosphato* 'hypophosphate'

**new formation:**

*acide* 'acid' > *hypoacide* 'hypeacid'

*Note:* Cf. the nontechnical synonym *sub-*.

meta-

1. 'behind' e.g.

*carpo* [Anat.] 'wrist, carpus' > *metacarpo* [Anat.] 'metacarpus'

**new formation:**

*branchia* [Zool.] 'gill, branchia' > *metabranhial*

2. 'beyond, transcending, higher' e.g.

*physica* 'physics' > *metaphysica* 'metaphysics'; **new formation:**

*mathematica* 'mathematics' > *metamathematica* 'metamathematics'

3. 'after, subsequent to' e.g.

*zoon* > *metazoon*

**new formation:**

*arthritis* > *metaarthritis*

## 5. Word Building

---

4. [Chem.] 'designating derived, metameric or similar compounds' e.g.  
*globulina* [Biochem.] 'globulin' > *metaglobulina* 'metaglobulin' **new formation:**  
*gelatina* 'gelatin' > *metagelatina* 'metagelatin'

*Note:* The variant *met-* appears before vowels and *h*. Cf. the nontechnical synonyms *trans-* and *ultra-*.

para-

- 'besides, alongside' e.g.  
*site* 'food' > *parasite* 'parasitic'  
**new formation:**  
*centro* 'center' > *paracentral*
- 'amiss, faulty, wrong' e.g.  
*-dox* 'opinion' > *paradoxe* 'paradoxical'  
**new formation:**  
*-phem* 'voice' > *paraphemia*
- 'resembling; modification of' e.g.  
*typhoide* 'typhoid' > *paratyphoide* 'paratyphoid'  
**new formation:**  
*physic* 'physical' > *paraphysic* 'paraphysical'

*Note:* The variant *par-* appears before vowels and *h*.

peri-

'around, about' e.g.  
*metro* 'measure' > *perimetro* 'perimeter'  
**new formation:**  
*arteria* 'artery' > *periarterial*  
*Note:* Cf. the nontechnical synonym *circum-*.

syn-

'with, together; alike' e.g.  
*logos* 'logos' > *sylogisar* 'to syllogize'  
*chrono* 'time' > *sychrone* 'synchronous'  
*phon* 'voice, sound' > *symphone* 'symphonicus'  
**new formation:**  
*dactyl* 'finger' > *syndactyle* [Zool., Med.] 'syndactyl'  
*Note:* Appears as *syl-* before *t*; *sym-* before *b, m, p, ph*. Cf. the nontechnical synonym *con-*.

### 5.8. Compounding by means of compounding forms

#### §159

Compounds which result from the COMBINATION OF TWO FULL-FLEDGED WORDS are formed either by simple juxtaposition - as illustrated by English 'teapot,' 'thunderstorm,' 'goose flesh,' etc. - or involve the use of a compounding feature - e.g. 'cylindr-o-cellular,' 'man-i-cure,' etc. Interlingua lacks the unlimited possibility of active compounding by simple juxtaposition which is characteristic (although not a distinctive feature) of the Teutonic languages. Among the expressive devices available in Interlingua as complements of its compounding system, the following are to be noted:

1. English compounds often correspond to Interlingua suffix formations.

- 'milkman' *lactero*
  - 'milkmaid' *lactera*
  - '(milk shop) dairy' *lacteria*
  - 'rice field' *risiera*
  - 'swineherd' *porchero*
  - 'pigsty' *porchiera*
  - 'pork shop' *porcheria*
  - 'plum tree' *pruniero*
  - 'raspberry bush' *frambesiero*
2. English compounds correspond very frequently to Interlingua prepositional phrases. The choice of the preposition permits often a clear statement of the relationship between the elements which in English is left to context and common sense. e.g.: it is not the words 'seaman' and 'milkman' which tell us that the latter does not sail on milk and that the former does not sell sea water.
- 'bus station' *station de omnibus*
  - 'cashbook' *libro de cassa*
  - 'caterpillar tractor' *tractor a erucas*
  - 'chamber music' *musica de camera*
  - 'waiting room' *sala a attender*
  - 'handbag' *sacco a mano*
3. In numerous instances English compounds are best rendered in Interlingua by nouns modified by adjectives.
- 'sunlight' *lumine solar*
  - 'tearpit' *sacco lacrimal*
  - 'redskin' *pelle rubie*
  - 'blood vessel' *vaso sanguinari*

### §160

Active compounding in Interlingua is bound to, but completely free within the limits of, analogical patterns. This means that - apart from compounding forms which function as virtual affixes (see §161, §164 below) - the elements to be joined in a new compound must each occur in one or several traditional compounds which serve to show under what form the separate words enter into the compound. Note that most compounds are linked by a vowel compounding feature. This disappears generally when the first sound of the second element is again a vowel. The compounding vowel is often but not necessarily the normal ending of the first element when used as an independent word. In the great majority of compounds the vowel link is o or i.

In the following examples active compounding is illustrated within the pattern of the equation: traditional compound A and traditional compound B permit the formation of the new compound C.

## 5. Word Building

---

*Note:* Some of the compounds given as new Interlingua formations may naturally exist in the vocabulary of one or another ethnic language.

<i>hepatologia</i>	<i>appendicectomy</i>	<i>hepatectomia</i>	'removal of the liver'
<i>cyanotipo</i>	<i>claustrophobia</i>	<i>cyanophobia</i>	'fear of the color blue'
<i>sciamachia</i>	<i>necromantia</i>	<i>sciamantia</i>	'prophecy by shadows'
<i>genealogo</i>	<i>idolatria</i>	<i>genealatria</i>	'worship of descent'
<i>agricultura</i>	<i>lignicole</i>	<i>lignicultura</i>	'cultivation of wood'
<i>microcosmic</i>	<i>pseudoclassic</i>	<i>pseudocosmic</i>	'pseudocosmic'

### §161

A considerable number of words occur so frequently in compounds that their compounding form (together with the compounding vowel if any) differs little from a prefix or suffix. Those to be used freely in any meaningful combination with another element (which may but need not occur in traditional compounds) are listed below followed by one or several traditional examples and new formations. They will prove especially useful for various scientific and technical requirements. Cf. also [§164](#) below.

#### 5.8.1. First elements or prefixes.

aero-

(combining form of *aere* 'air'), e.g.

*aeronave* 'airship'

*aerodynamic, aerostatica* 'aerostatics'

**new formations:**

*aeropression* 'air pressure'

*aerophobia, aerotherapia* 'aerotherapy'

*aerotransporto* 'air transport'

archi-

('arch-, archi-'), e.g.

*archiepiscopo* 'archbishop'

**new formations:**

*archidarwinista* 'arch-Darwinist'

*archilegal* 'archlegal, legal beyond the shadow of a doubt'

electro-

(combining form of *electric, electricitate*, etc. 'electric, electricity, etc. '), e.g.

*electromotor, electrotherapia* 'electrotherapy'

**new formations:**

*electropropulsion* 'propulsion by electricity'

*electropiano* 'electric piano'

equi-

(combining form of *eque* with the meaning of *equal* 'equal, equally'), e.g.

*equilateral, equivaler* 'to be equivalent'

**new formations:**

- equicurvate* 'having two equal curves'  
*equisonantia* 'equal sounding'
- hetero-  
 ('other, different'), e.g.  
*heterosexual*  
**new formation:**  
*heteroracial* 'of different races'
- homo-  
 (before vowels *hom-*; 'same'), e.g.  
*homologe* 'homologous', *homocentric*  
**new formations:**  
*homolithic* 'consisting of the same stone'  
*homopersonal* 'having one person'
- homeo-  
 (before vowels *home-*; 'like, similar'), e.g.  
*homeopathic*  
**new formations:**  
*homeolithic* 'consisting of similar stone'  
*homeoracial* 'of similar races'
- hydro-  
 ('water'), e.g.  
*hydroelectric*, *hydrocephalo* 'hydrocephalus'  
**new formations:**  
*hydrosaturate* 'water-saturated'  
*hydrochimia* 'chemistry of water'
- iso-  
 (synonym of *equi-*; 'equal'), e.g.  
*isometric*, *isodynamic*  
**new formations:**  
*isoradial* 'having equal radii'  
*isoglotte* 'speaking the same language'
- macro-  
 ('long, large,' often contrasted with *micro-*), e.g.  
*macroscopic*, *macroseismo* 'major earthquake'  
**new formations:**  
*macroorganismo* 'large organism (visible to the naked eye)'  
*macropetale* 'large-petaled'
- micro-  
 ('small; microscopic,' often contrasted with *macro-*), e.g.  
*microcosmo* 'microcosm',  
*microcephale* 'small-skulled'  
**new formations:**  
*microcellular* 'of microscopic cells',  
*microphono* 'microphone'
- neo-  
 ('new, modern'), e.g.  
*neolatin*, *neonato* 'new-born baby'  
**new formations:**

## 5. Word Building

---

*neoromantic*

*neo-jeffersonismo* 'neo-Jeffersonianism'

omni-

(combining form of *omne* 'all, every'), e.g.

*omnivore* 'eating anything,'

*omnipotente* 'omnipotent'

**new formations:**

*omniaudiente* 'hearing everything,'

*omniprotector* 'all-protector'

paleo-

('old, ancient'; often contrasted with *neo-*), e.g.

*paleozoic*

**new formations:**

*paleohistoria* 'early history,'

*paleoindoeuropean* 'primitive Indo-European'

pan-

('including all'), e.g.

*panamerican* 'Pan-American'

**new formations:**

*pandualismo* 'universal dualism,'

*panarchia* 'universal rule'

photo-

(1. 'light'; 2. 'photography'), e.g.

*photographia* 'photography'

**new formations:**

*photoanalyse* 'analysis of or by means of light'

*photosculptura* 'photosculpture'

proto-

('first, primitive, prototypal'), e.g.

*prototipo* 'prototype'

**new formations:**

*protoanimal*

*protoreligion* 'prototype of religion'

pseudo-

('pseudo-'), e.g.

*pseudoclassic*

**new formations:**

*pseudohuman* 'pseudohuman(e),'

*pseudotolerantia* 'pseudotolerance'

quasi-

('quasi-'), e.g.

*quasi-delicto* 'quasi delict'

**new formations:**

*quasi-ver* 'quasi true,'

*quasi-confidentia* 'quasi trust'

radio-

(1. 'ray'; 2. 'radio'), e.g.

*radiographia* 'x-ray photography'

*radiodiffunder* 'to broadcast'

**new formations:**

*radiotheoria* 'ray theory'

*radiopropaganda* 'radio publicity'

tele-

('far off'), e.g.

*telescopio* 'telescope,'

*television*

**new formations:**

*telediffunder* 'to broadcast long-distance,'

*teleanalyse* 'analysis at a distance'

### 5.8.2. Second elements or suffixes.

*Note:* The initial vowels indicated in the form below are the norm. In combinations with first elements which have an established compounding pattern, the normal vowel may disappear or be replaced by another. e.g. *tele-* (which enters into compounds without a compounding vowel) plus *-ometro* would yield *telemetro*.

-icida

('killer'), e.g.

*matricida* 'killer of his mother'

**new formations:**

*bufonicida* 'toad killer,'

*draconicida* 'dragon killer'

-icidio

('killing'), e.g.

*matricidio* 'killing of one's mother'

**new formations:**

*odoricidio* 'killing of odors,'

*hippicidio* 'killing of horses'

-omanev

('mad'), e.g.

*megalomane* 'megalomaniac (adj.)'

**new formations:**

*alcoholomane* 'alcohol-craving,'

*telephonomane* 'madly addicted to the use of the telephone.'

*Note:* The derivatives *-omano* 'a man thus afflicted,' *-omana* 'a woman thus afflicted,' and *-omania* 'the affliction itself' may likewise be used as suffixes.

-ometro

('measuring instrument'), e.g.

*serometro* 'serometer'

**new formations:**

*crystallometro* 'crystallometer,'

*cardiometro* 'cardiometer'

-ographo

(1. 'instrument that writes or records'; 2. '-grapher'), e.g.

*seismographo* 'seismograph,'

## 5. Word Building

---

*biographo* 'biographer'

**new formations:**

*heliographo* 'heliograph,'

*fluxographo* 'instrument measuring quantity or speed of flow.'

*Note:* The derivative *-ographia* 'system or technique of recording' may likewise be used as a suffix.

-ologo

('-ologue, -ologer, -ologist'), *graphologo* 'graphologist'

**new formations:**

*petroleologo* 'oil expert'

*scientiologo* 'student of the organization of the sciences.'

*Note:* The derivative *-ologia* 'science' may likewise be used as a suffix.

-ophile

('loving, fond of'; often contrasted with *-ophobe*), e.g.

*bibliophile* (adj.)

**new formations:**

*heliophile* 'fond of the sun,'

*palestinophile* 'Palestinophile.'

*Note:* The derivatives *-ophilo* 'a man thus characterized,' *-ophila* 'a woman thus characterized,' and *-ophilia* 'the tendency itself' may likewise be used as suffixes.

-ophobe

('fearing, disliking'; often contrasted with *-ophile*), e.g.

*anglophobe*

new formation:

*hispanophobe* 'Hispanophobe.'

*Note:* The derivatives *-ophobo* 'a man thus characterized,' *-ophoba* 'a woman thus characterized,' and *-ophobia* 'the tendency itself' may likewise be used as suffixes.

-oscopo

('-oscopist'), e.g.

*cranioscopo* 'cranioscopist'

**new formation:**

*röntgenoscopo* 'x-ray examiner.'

*Note:* The derivatives *-oscopia* 'the instrument serving the -oscopist,' *-oscopia* 'the field of study,' and *-oscopic* 'pertaining to the study' may likewise be used as suffixes.

### §162

On compound numerals, cf. [§119](#) above; on numerals as compounding elements [§128](#).

## 5.9. Compounding Derivation

### §163

COMPOUNDING by prefixes as well as by the combination of full-fledged words is often carried out IN CONJUNCTION WITH DERIVATION by affixes. (Cf. [§155](#) above.) A formation like *infiltrar* 'to infiltrate' is not, strictly speaking, a compound of *in* plus *filtrar* but a compound derivative from *in* plus *filtro* 'filter' by means of the verbal suffix *-ar*.



Similarly *heliocentric* is not a derivative from *heliocentro* (which does not exist) but from *helio-* plus *centro* by means of the adjectival suffix *ic*. Further random examples are:

- *cupa*'vat' added to *semi-* yields *semicupio*'sitz bath'
- *latere*'side' added to *uni-* yields *unilateral*
- *fresc*'fresh' added to *re-* yields *refrescar*'to refresh'
- *commode*'convenient' added to *ad-* yields *accommodar*'to accommodate'

See also under multiplicative numeral compounds (§128 above), a category in which compound derivatives abound. Formations of this type present no special problems. Their active use as models for new analogical formations simply entails two patterns in combination and both of these must answer the requirements for simple model features. Hence *semicupio* with its isolated suffix *-io* is not to be recommended as a model for further formations while *refrescar* is a perfect pattern for *repatriar*'to repatriate' (from *patria*'fatherland'), *impipar*'to put into one's pipe' (from *pipa*'pipe'), etc.

*Note:* In compounds of this category the second element exhibits at times a change of stem which must be observed in analogical formations. e.g. *anno*'year' added to *mille*'thousand' yields *millennio*'millennium.'

#### §164

A number of nouns and verbs yield adjectives by a process of compounding derivation in which the suffix is the simple adjectival ending (*-e* or nothing). Examples are:

- *collo*'neck' added to *late*'wide' yields *laticolle*'thick-necked'
- *flor*'flower' added to *albe*'white' yields *albiflor*'white-flowered'
- *forma*'form' added to *cruce*'cross' yields *cruciforme*'cross-shaped'
- *latere*'side' added to *multe*'many' yields *multilatera*'many-sided'
- *linea*'line' added to *mixte*'mixed' yields *mixtilinea*'mixtilinear'
- *lingua*'tongue' added to *crasse*'fat' yields *crassilingue*'thick-tongued'
- *modo*'mode' added to *omne*'all' yields *omnimode*'multifarious'
- *pede*'foot' added to *sol*'alone' yields *solipede*'one-footed'
- *remo*'oar' added to *tres*'three' yields *trireme*'three-oared'
- *rostro*'beak' added to *hamo*'hook' yields *hamirostre*'hamirostrate'
- *sono*'sound' added to *unda*'wave' yields *undisone*'wavelike (in sound)'
- *syllabo*'syllable' added to *poly-*'many' yields *polysyllabe*'polysyllabic'
- *coler*'to cultivate' added to *vino*'wine' yields *vinicole*'wine-growing'
- *fluer*'to flow' added to *melle*'honey' yields *melliflue*'mellifluous'
- *franger*'to break' added to *saxo*'rock' yields *saxifrage*'saxifragous'
- *fugir*'to flee' added to *verme*'worm' yields *vermifuge*'vermifuge'
- *loquer*'to talk' added to *ventre*'belly' yields *ventriloque*'ventriloquous'
- *parer*'to bear, give birth to' added to *vive*'alive' yields *vivipare*'viviparous'
- *vomir*'to vomit' added to *igne*'fire' yields *ignivome*'vomiting fire'
- *vorar*'to devour' added to *carne*'meat' yields *carnivore*'carnivorous' etc.

## 5. Word Building

---

Any one of these formations can serve as the model for further formations involving the same second element. This second element may be regarded and used as a suffix.

The compounding vowel is to be considered part of it as illustrated in the following examples:

- *-iforme*: *gambiforme*'leg-shaped'; *milliforme*'of a thousand shapes'
- *-ilingue*: *acutilingue*'sharp-tongued'; *lentilingue*'slow-tongued'
- *-ipede*: *cervipede*'deer-footed'; *unipede*'one-footed'
- *-isone*: *americanisone*'American-sounding'; *tonitrisone*'sounding like thunder'
- *-icole*: *pinicole*'pine-growing'; *capillicole*'hair-growing'
- *-iloque*: *multiloque*'talking much'; *follioque*'talking like a madman'
- *-ipare*: *bufonipare*'giving birth to toads'; *ignipare*'fire-bearing'
- *-ivome*: *injuriivome*'spitting insults'; *aurivome*'spitting gold' etc.

*Note*: Suffixes of this kind are compounding forms of corresponding nouns and verbs. In so far as such nouns and verbs have derivatives of their own, these may likewise be used in new formations parallel to the type illustrated above. e.g., as *-icole* comes from the verb *coler* and as *coler* has derivatives like *cultor*, *cultura*, etc., it is possible to form parallel to all formations in *-icole* others in *-icultor*, *-icultura*, etc. Hence free formations like *acutilingual*, *tonitrisonante*, *pinicultura*, *multiloquentia*, *igniparente*, etc.

### §165

PREPOSITIONS AND CONJUNCTIONS include a number of compounds which cannot serve as models for additional formations. Strictly speaking there is no word building in regard to either of these parts of speech. Forms like *depost*, *proque*, *malgrado*, etc. are unique and suggest no further parallel formations.

It may be noted however that a number of prepositions correspond to parallel conjunctions in *que*. Examples are:

- *ante*'before (prep)': *ante que*'before (conj)'
- *depost*'afterwards': *depost que*'since'
- *durante*'during': *durante que*'whilst'
- *malgrado*'despite': *malgrado que*'although'
- *per*'through': *perque*'because'
- *post*'after': *post que*'since, because'
- *pro*'for': *proque*'because'
- *salvo*'save': *salvo que*'save, but that'
- *secundo*'along': *secundo que*'according as'
- *ultra*'beyond': *ultra que*'aside from the fact that'
- *viste*'in view of': *viste que*'considering that'

When words like *considerante*, *excepte*, etc. are used with prepositional functions, the addition of the conjunction *que* will make them into conjunctive locutions.

*Considerante su etate, ille es multo vivace*  
'Considering his age, he is quite lively'

*Considerante que ille es multo vetule, ille es bastante vivace*  
'Considering that he is very old, he is rather lively'

### §166

Prepositional and conjunctive locutions are very numerous and new ones can be formed as freely as in English.

*con le exceptione de*  
'except, with the exception of'

*per medio de*  
'through, by means of'

*in respectu a*  
'in regard to, with reference to'

*pro le beneficio de*  
'for the benefit of, in behalf of'

*supponite que*  
'supposing that'

### §167

*Note:* As dictated by practical requirements, it is possible to use two prepositions together after the pattern of English 'in between' which differs from compound prepositions like 'into' and 'upon' merely through the separate spelling of the two elements.

*Io va a in le foresta*  
'I go into (to in) the forest'

*(Io va in le foresta*  
'I walk in the forest' or 'I walk into the forest')

*illo cadeva a inter le libros*  
'It fell down (to a place) in between the books'

*illa te accompaniara usque a trans le montanias*  
'She will accompany you to (a place) beyond the mountains'

## 6. Appendix 1

### 6.1. Double-Stem Verbs

It may be important to note that the term "irregular second stem of verbs" as used in this grammar must not be allowed to conjure up the specter of verbal irregularities characteristic of most ethnic languages. In Interlingua the irregular second stem of verbs has nothing to do with matters of conjugation. It is a stem which occurs in certain derived nouns and adjectives and prevents these from assuming unnaturally distorted forms, as for instance *scribitura* instead of *scriptura* (from *scriber*), *corruptitive* instead of *corruptive* (from *corrumper*), *incidition* instead of *incision* (from *incider*), etc. Furthermore the "regular" type, *scribitura*, *corruptitive*, *incidition*, etc., need not be considered "wrong" but may be used whenever it seems stylistically possible or preferable.

In active word building it will be found that the irregular second stem occasions few difficulties but often simplifies the process of derivation. To derive, for instance, the "regular" form *collidition* from *collider* is not easy for anyone speaking as his native language English or any of the other languages of Western Civilization, while the use of the "irregular" stem *collis-* with a resulting *collision* seems natural and hence easy.

Finally one must not overlook the fact that active word building is in practice rarely a matter of deriving one word from another in a vacuum, so to speak, but rather a matter of fitting a new formation into a pattern of several familiar ones. To illustrate: Anyone needing an adjective to go with let us say *extraher* 'to extract,' will spontaneously coin *extractive*, not as the laborious result of attaching *-ive* to the verb but rather because *extractive* fits into the pattern of words already known, like *extraher*, *extractor*, *extraction*, *extrahente*. The new formation *extractive* is not - psychologically and pedagogically speaking - derived from an isolated *extraher*. It is fashioned from *extraher* in the presence of *extraction*, *extractor*, etc.

Every verb whose second stem does not result from the first by the simple addition of *-at-* or *-it-* is accompanied in the Interlingua-English Dictionary by a full statement of its two stems. A descriptive survey of the irregular second stem of verbs may still be found useful for certain purposes and is attempted in the following paragraphs. Note that infinitives which do not appear in the Interlingua-English Dictionary are listed below within parentheses.

No derived verb can ever have an irregular second stem. Verbs like *fusionar* (from *fusion*), *degrader* (from *grado*), *normalisar* (from *normal*), *falsificar* (from *false*), *blanchir* (from *blanc*), etc. are always regular.

## 6. Appendix 1

---

Compound verbs - whether formed with prefixes (*componer, imprimer, interroger*, etc.) or the compounding forms of full-fledged words (*calefacier, benedicer*, etc.) follow the pattern of the corresponding simple verbs in regard to regularity or irregularity of their second stems. Note that the stem vowel of verbs compounded with prefixes differs occasionally from the corresponding vowel of the simple verb, a phenomenon not to be preserved in active compounding. Such compounded verbs often recover or approach the original vowel-the vowel of the simple verb-in their irregular second stem.

(a: i/a) *ager* - ag-/act-; *rediger* - redig-/redact-  
(a: i/e) *facier* - fac-/fact-; *conficier* - confic-/confect-  
(e: i/e) *leger* - leg-/lect-; *colliger* - collig-/collect-

Verbs whose infinitive ends in *-ar* have an irregular second stem in only three exceptional instances.

*fricar*: fric-/frict-  
*juvar*: juv-/jut-  
*secar*: sec-/sect-

Verbs whose infinitives end in *-ir* have an irregular second stem in the following exceptional instances:

(*aborir*): abor-/abort-  
*aperir*: aper-/apert-  
*coperir*: coper-/copert-  
*experir*: exper-/expert-  
*haurir*: haur-/haust-  
*metir*: met-/mens-  
*morir*: mor-/mort-  
*patir*: pat-/pass-  
*salir*: sal-/salt-  
*sancir*: sanc-/sanct-  
*sarcir*: sarc-/sart-  
*sentir*: sent-/sens-  
*venir*: ven-/vent-

All other verbs with irregular second stems have infinitives ending in *-er*. This statement cannot be reversed. Not all verbs ending in *-er* have irregular second stems. But cf. [§148](#).

Verbs with infinitives in *-er* which have an irregular second stem can be grouped as follows:

1. When the first stem ends in *c, l, n, p, r, u, x*, the second stem is normally formed by the addition of *t*. Examples:

*docer*: doc-/doct-  
*ducer*: duc-/duct-  
(*consuler*): consul-/consult-

*tener*: ten-/tent-  
*caper*: cap-/capt-  
*rapere*: rap-/rapt-  
*parere*: par-/part-  
*(serere)*: ser-/sert-  
*-luer*: -lu-/lut-  
*tribuer*: tribu-/tribut-  
*texere*: tex-/text-

- When the first stem ends in *sc*, this ending is reduced before the *t* added to form the second stem in the following examples:

*crescere*: cresc-/cret-  
*cognoscere*: cognosc-/cognit-  
*miscere*: misc-/mixt-  
*pascere*: pasc-/past-  
*(noscere)*: nosc-/not-  
*quiescere*: quiesc-/quiet-

- Through the addition of *t* to form the second stem, the concluding sound (and spelling) of the first stem is normally affected as follows: *b* becomes *p*; *g* and *h* become *c*; *m* becomes *mp*; *qu* becomes *cu*; *v* becomes *u*. Examples:

*scribere*: scrib-/script-  
*sorbere*: sorb-/sorpt-  
*agere*: ag-/act-  
*regere*: reg-/rect-  
*trahere*: trah-/tract-  
*vehere*: veh-/vect-  
*emere*: em-/empt-  
*sumere*: sum-/sumpt-  
*(loquere)*: loqu-/locut-  
*sequere*: sequ-/secut-  
*solvere*: solv-/solut-  
*volvere*: volt-/volut-

- In the following instances the final *r* of the first stem becomes an *s* before the *t* added to form the second stem:

*gerere*: ger-/gest-  
*haurire*: haur-/haust-  
*querere*: quer-/quest-  
*torrere*: torr-/tost-  
*urere*: ur-/ust-

- When the first stem ends in *d* or *t* (also *tt*), the second stem is normally formed by changing these consonants to *s* or *ss*.

(*ceder*): ced-/cess-  
*seder*: sed-/sess-  
*cader*: cad-/cas-  
*-luder*: -lud-/lus-  
*scander*: scand-/scans-  
(*uter*): ut-/us-  
*verter*: vert-/vers-  
*mitter*: mitt-/miss-

Similarly *ct* is changed to *x*. Examples:

*flecter*: flect-/flex-  
(*necter*): nect-/nex-

6. In the following instances the second stem is formed by the addition of *s* to the first stem.

(*celler*): cell-/cels-  
*censer*: cens-/cens-  
*currer*: curr-/curs-  
*figer*: fig-/fix-  
*-herer*: -her-/hes-  
*laber*: lab-/laps-  
*merger*: merg-/mers-  
*mulger*: mulg-/muls-  
(*pell*): pell-/puls-  
*sparger*: sparg-/spars-  
*torquer*: torqu-/tors-, tort-  
*veller*: vell-/vuls-

7. The following verbs which belong in one or another of the preceding categories are further characterized by the suppression of *m* and *n* in the second stem:

*contemner*: contemn-/contempt-  
*finger*: fing-/fict-  
*finder*: find-/fiss-  
*franger*: frang-/fract-  
*funder*: fund-/fus-  
(*panger*): pang-/pact-  
*pinger*: ping-/pict-  
*rumper*: rump-/rupt-  
*scinder*: scind-/sciss-  
*stringer*: string-/strict-  
*tanger*: tang-/tact-  
*tunder*: tund-/tus-  
*vincer*: vinc-/vict-

8. Various irregularities not covered in the preceding categories appear in the following verbs:

*compler*: comple-/complet-  
*deler*: dele-/delet-  
*mover*: mov-/mot-  
*vover*: vov-/vot-  
*cerner*: cern-/cret-  
*coler*: col-/cult-  
*(siner)*: sin-/sit-  
*(sterner)*: stern-/strat-  
*distinguer*: distingu-/distinct-  
*extinguer*: extingu-/extinct-  
*(instinguer)*: instingu-/instinct-  
*struer*: stru-/struct-  
*-ferer*: -fer-/lat-  
*offerer*: offer-/offert-, oblat-  
*fluer*: flu-/fluct-, flux-  
*fruer*: fru-/fruct-, fruit-  
*indulger*: indulg-/indult-  
*(linquer)*: linqu-/lict-  
*poner*: pon-/posit-, post-  
*premer*: prem-/press-  
*prender*: prend-/prens-, pris-  
*surger*: surg-/surrect-  
*tender*: tend-/tens-, tent-  
*(terer)*: ter-/trit-  
*torquer*: torqu-/tort-, tors-  
*torrer*: torr-/tost-  
*(tuer)*: tu-/tut-, tuit-  
*verter*: vert-/vers-, -ors-  
*vider*: vid-/vis-, vist-  
*volver*: volv-/volut-, volt-



## 7. Appendix 2 - English-Interlingua Word List

*Note:* The following list of one thousand English words with Interlingua equivalents is not a basic or minimum vocabulary. It is a key to the Interlingua-English Dictionary (IED) enabling the user of that work to have it serve the functions of an English-Interlingua Dictionary (EID) until the volume answering that description can be completed and published.

The translator from English into Interlingua will find the IED a satisfactory tool for his purposes as long as he merely wishes to ascertain that his surmises or hunches are correct. He may suspect that the Interlingua word for 'nature' is *natura* or he may have a hunch that 'devour' (associated in his mind with 'voracious') should be something like *devorar*. In both cases the IED can tell him that he is correct.

In using the IED in this fashion as a substitute for the companion EID, one's "guessing average" can be improved if one bears in mind (1) that English words of Anglo-Saxon background - in contrast to their non-Anglo-Saxon synonyms - bear normally no resemblance in form to their Interlingua equivalents, and (2) that all entries in the IED are printed in such a way that it is easy to find for any given word all the members of its derivational family. Point (1) implies that to find in the IED words for 'fall,' 'to look at,' 'bend,' etc., one had better start with their non-Anglo-Saxon synonyms 'autumn,' 'to observe,' 'curve,' etc. Point (2) implies that the Interlingua equivalents of 'brief,' 'ass,' 'to imply,' etc. are more readily traced if one starts out with 'brevity,' 'asinine,' 'implication,' or the like. Most frequently both points will have to be made use of. To find the Interlingua equivalent of 'to see,' 'eye,' 'smell,' etc., one should start with 'visible,' 'oculist,' 'olfactory,' etc.

It is obvious that these devices cannot solve all problems confronting the user who wishes to have the IED serve in lieu of the EID. To find in the IED the Interlingua equivalent of 'bridge,' 'cheese,' 'although,' 'since,' etc., one has no (or at least no readily recognizable) synonyms and related derivatives to go by. This is the kind of problem which the following list of words has been designed to settle. In it the Interlingua renderings are not presented as complete and unambiguous dictionary entries. For more detailed information the IED will need to be consulted.

Pronouns which appear in tabular surveys in the preceding grammar are not repeated in the list below. In the case of words represented in the IED by alternate forms, only one is entered below. For a full list of such doublets, see [§134](#) (end of introductory note).

### 7.1. A - D

a		<i>a dollar a dozen:</i> un dollar le dozena
un;	able	

## 7. Appendix 2 - English-Interlingua Word List

---

habile, capabile	quasi
about	along
circa; de, super; re	preter, secundo
above	already
super, supra	jam
abroad	also
al estraniero, al extero	etiam, anque
according to	although
secundo; conforme a	ben que
account	always
conto; relation, reporto;	semper
<i>on account of</i> : a causa de	among
across	inter
trans; a transverso; al altere latere (de)	and
advertise	e
facer reclamo (pro)	anger
afraid	cholera, ira
apprehensive;	another
<i>to be afraid that</i> : timer que	altere; un altere
after	ant
post; depost; postquam	formica
afternoon	any
postmeridie	alicun;
afterwards	<i>not any</i> : nulle
postea, depost, post	anybody
again	alicuno
de nove, altere vice; re-	anything
against	alique
contra	anyway
age	comocunque; indifferentemente; in
etate; vetulesa	omne caso
ago	anywhere
retro, passato	alicubi
agree	apart
concordar, esser de accordo; convenir	a parte, separatamente
ahead	apple
ante, avante	malo, pomo
aim	arm
<i>n fin</i> , objecto, scopo; mira;	bracio
<i>v visar</i>	around
alike	circa
simile, similar; equal; del mesme	as
maniera, equalmente	como; quando, durante que;
all	<i>as ... as</i> : si ... como;
omne, tote;	<i>as for</i> : quanto a;
<i>all right</i> : all right [A], ben, bon;	<i>as much (many)</i> ... <i>as</i> : tante... como;
<i>not at all</i> : nullemente	<i>as though</i> : quasi que, como si
almost	ash

cinere	beautiful
aside	belle
al latere; a parte;	because
<i>aside from the fact that:</i> ultra que	perque, proque, quia; post que, pois
ask	que;
demandar; peter, rogar	<i>because of:</i> a causa de
at	become
a; apud;	devenir; convenir a; ir (ben) a
<i>at the home of:</i> a presso de	bed
aunt	lecto
amita	bee
average	apicula
<i>adj</i> medie	before
avoid	ante, avante; ante que, avante que;
evitar	<i>before long:</i> in pauco
away	beg
via; absente;	mendicar; precar, supplicar; rogar,
<i>far away:</i> longe	peter
back	begin
<i>n</i> dorso; reverso;	comenciar; iniciar
<i>adv</i> retro	behind
backwards	post
retro, a retro	bell
bad	campana
mal	belong
bag	pertiner
sacco; tasca; valise [F]	below
bake	infra, sub; subtus; in basso (de)
cocer (in le furno)	belt
baker	cinctura
panetero; furnero	bend
basket	flecter, plicar
corbe, paniero	berry
bath	Baca
banio	beside
be	de plus, ultra ille; al latere de, juxta
esser;	besides
<i>to be cold:</i> 1. haber frigido; 2. facer	item, de plus, extra; ultra
frigido	better
bean	<i>adj</i> plus bon, melior;
faba	<i>adv</i> plus ben, melio;
beat	<i>so much the better:</i> tanto melio
batter; pulsar	between
bear	inter
<i>n</i> urso	beyond
bear	ultra; trans
<i>v</i> portar; parturir, parer; sustener;	bill
indurar, sufferer; tolerar	factura; nota; billet; tratta; placard

7. Appendix 2 - English-Interlingua Word List

---

	[F]; projecto (de lege), bill [A]		<i>to be born</i> : nacer
bird	ave	borrow	facer se prestar
birth	nascentia, nativitate; parto	both	ambe; tote le duo; <i>both ... and</i> : e ... e
bite	morder; piccar	bottom	fundo; base; basso
bitter	amar	bow	<i>n</i> arco; archetto
black	nigre	bow	<i>v</i> inclinar se; submitter se, plicar se
blade	folio (de herba); pala; lamina	bowl	bassino; bassinetto; scutella
blame	blasmar	box	cassa; [Theat.] logia, loge [F]
bleed	sanguinar; [Med.] scarificar	boy	puero, pupo; garson; domestico, boy [A]
bless	benedicer	brain	cerebro; <i>brains</i> : cerebro; mente
blind	cec	brake	freno
block	bloco; insula; obstruction	branch	branca, ramo; filial
blood	sanguine	brass	laton; [Mus.] cupros
blow	<i>n</i> colpo	bread	pan
blow	<i>v</i> sufflar	break	rumper, franger; infringer, violar
blue	blau	breakfast	jentar
board	planca; tabula; [Games] tabuliero; alimento, repastos; [Naut.] bordo; consilio	breath	halito; respiration; sufflo
boast	vantar	bridge	ponte; [Cards] bridge [A]
boat	barca, imbarcation; nave	bright	brillante, lucente, lucide; vive; intelligente
boil	bullir; cocer	bring	apportar
bone	osso; spina	broad	large
book	libro		
born	nate, nascite;		

brown	carta
brun	care
brush	<i>n</i> affliction; anxietate; attention; precaution; reguardo; carga;
brossa; penicillo	<i>v</i> interessar se; sentir affection
bucket	carry
situla	portar
build	cat
construer, edificar, struer	catto
bunch	catch
racemo; gruppo	sasir; capturar; attinger; attrappar; captivar; comprender; contraher
burn	chain
arder; comburer; incinerar	catena
bury	chair
interrar	chaise [F]; cathedra
bus	chalk
omnibus	creta
bush	chance
arbusto; -iero	hasardo; fortuna, sorte
business	change
occupation, profession; mestiero; affaires [F]; commercio, negotio; firma, establimento	cambio; cambiamento; parve moneta
busy	charge
occupate; frequentate, populate	cargar; incargar; accusar; imputar; [Com.] demandar
but	cheap
sed, ma; excepte, salvo; solmente; <i>but that</i> : salvo que; <i>not only... but also</i> : non solmente... sed etiam, non solmente... ma anque	vil; a bon mercato
butter	check
butyro	<i>n</i> [Chess] chaco; marca; billet, ticket [A]; [Banking] cheque [A]
buy	cheerful
emer	allegre, hilare
by	cheese
juxta, apud; per; con; de	caseo
cake	chest
torta; <i>cake (of soap)</i> : pecia (de sapon)	cassa; coffro; pectore; thorace
call	chicken
critar; vocar; nominar, appellar; advocar	gallina; galletto, pullo
can	chief
<i>n</i> (cassa de) latta	capite, chef [F]; principal
can	child
<i>v</i> poter	infante; puero, pupo
candy	chimney
bonbon; confecto	camino
card	chin
	mento
	Christmas

7. Appendix 2 - English-Interlingua Word List

---

Natal	cover
claim	coperir
reclamar; pretender a	cow
clean	vacca
munde; pur	coward
climb	coardo
scander	crack
clock	finder; rumper; craccar, crepar
horologio	crash
close	fracassar; collider; craccar, crepar
<i>adj</i> proxime;	creep
<i>adv</i> juxta, presso	reper, reptar
close	crop
<i>v</i> clauder	recolta, messe
cloth	crowd
tela; panno, pannello	pressa; multitude; grege; turba
clothes	crown
vestimento(s), habito(s)	corona
cloud	crush
nube	contunder; fullar; pulverisar, triturar;
coal	reprimer
carbon	cry
coat	critar, clamar; plorar, lacrimar
jaco, jachetta; supertoto; mantello;	cup
revestimento; application; pelle	tassa; cuppa
coin	cure
moneta	curar; sanar
comb	curtain
pectine	cortina;
come	[Theat.] tela
venir	cushion
cook	cossino
<i>v</i> cocer;	customer
<i>n</i> cocinero, coco	cliente
cool	cut
fresc	secar, taliar, trenchar
copper	damage
cupro	damno, injuria;
corn	<i>damages</i> : compensation
grano; mais	danger
corner	periculo
angulo	dare
cough	osar
<i>n</i> tusse	dark
country	obscur; tenebrose
pais; campania	daughter
cousin	filia
cosino	day

die		<i>n</i> aquiero
dead	morte	draw
deal	mercar, commerciar; [Cards] dar; <i>deal with</i> : tractar	tirar, traher, trainar; designar
dealer	mercator, negociante, mercante	drawer
dear	car	tiratorio
degree	grado	dream
desk	scriptorio; bureau [F]	sonio
develop	disveloppar, evolver	dress
die	<i>v</i> morir	vestir
dig	foder; excavar	drink
dip	immerger; inclinar; abassar; descender	biber, potar
dirt	immunditia; solo	drive
dish	platto	<i>v</i> conducir, guidar; pulsar, chassar; figer;
do	facer; sufficer	<i>n</i> cursa, viage; allee [F], via
dog	can	drop
door	porta	<i>n</i> gutta, stilla
down	a basso; in basso	drop
drain		<i>v</i> cader; lassar cader; decrescer, diminuer
		drunk
		ebrie
		dry
		sic
		due
		<i>adj</i> debite; pagabile;
		<i>n</i> debito; detecto;
		<i>dues</i> : quota
		dull
		obtuse; mat; surde; stupide; enoiose; obscur
		during
		durante
		dust
		pulvere
		duty
		deber; carga; directo, imposto, doana

## 7.2. E - H

each	cata; <i>each other</i> : le un le altere, le unes le alteres	prematur
ear	aure	earn
early	matutinal; de bon hora; precoce;	ganiar
		earth
		terra; solo
		easy
		facile
		eat

## 7. Appendix 2 - English-Interlingua Word List

---

eder, mangiar	mal
edge	exchange
talia, filo; orlo; margine	excambiar
either	eye
-; <i>either one</i> : le un o le altere;	oculo
<i>not... either</i> : non... etiam, non...	face
anque;	facie; figura
<i>either... or</i> : o... o	factory
else	fabrica, manufactoria; factoria
altere; alteremente, alias; de plus,	fair
extra	belle; juste, eque; blonde
elsewhere	fairly
alibi	assatis, satis, bastante; justemente,
empty	equemente
vacue	faith
end	fide
fin; objecto, objectivo	fall
enemy	<i>n</i> autumno; cadita
inimico	fall
engine	<i>v</i> cader
machina; ingenio; locomotiva	far
English	<i>adj</i> distante, remote;
anglese	<i>adv</i> longe;
enjoy	<i>as far as</i> : quanto;
gustar; gauder de; delectar se in; fruer	<i>in so far as</i> : in tanto que;
(de)	<i>so far</i> : usque ora
enough	farm
satis, assatis, bastante; sufficiente	ferma; terra
even	farther
<i>adj</i> unite, lisie; par; equal; regular	<i>adj</i> plus distante;
even	<i>adv</i> plus longe, ultra
<i>adv</i> etiam, mesmo;	fat
<i>even if, even though</i> : etiam si, ben que	<i>adj</i> grasse;
evening	<i>n</i> grassia
vespere, vespera	fear
ever	timor, pavor
unquam, jammais, aliquando	feed
every	alimentar, nutrir; mangiar; pascere,
cata; tote, omne	pasturar
everybody	feel
totos, omnes; tote le mundo	sentir; tastar, palpar
everyday	fellow
quotidian; ordinari	companion, socio; homine; subjecto;
everything	typo
omne cosa; toto	fence
everywhere	barriera; sepe; receptator
ubique, in omne partes	few
evil	pauc;



	<i>a few</i> : alicun		affectionate, tenere;
field	campo		<i>to be fond of</i> : affectionar, amar
fight	lucta, combatto	food	alimento, eder, mangiar; nutrimento; comestibiles, viveres
fill	plenaar, impler	fool	imbecille; buffon
find	trovar	foolish	imbecille, fatue, insensate, insipiente
finger	digito	for	<i>prep</i> pro; <i>conj</i> nam; post que, pois que; <i>as for</i> : quanto a
fire	foco, igne; incendio	foreign	estranie, extere
first	prime; <i>first of all</i> : ante toto	forget	oblidar; disapprender
fish	pisce	former	anterior; <i>the former</i> : ille, celle
fit	<i>adj</i> apte; appropriate; convenibile; san; <i>n</i> accesso, convulsion, paroxysmo	formerly	antea; olim, anteriormente
fit	<i>v</i> adjustar (se a), adaptar (se a); accordar (se con); seder	forthwith	subinde, immediate
flag	bandiera	fowl	volatile; gallina
flat,	plan, platte; insipide; mat	frame	quadro; ossatura, skeleto; armatura, inquadramento
flesh	carne	free	<i>adj</i> libere, franc; gratuite; <i>adv</i> gratis
floor	solo; etage [F]	freight	onere, carga; <i>freight train</i> : traino de merces
flour	farina	fresh	fresc; <i>fresh water</i> : aqua dulce
flow	fluer	Friday	venerdi
fly	<i>n</i> musca	friend	amico
fly	<i>v</i> volar; fugir	from	de; ex; ab; <i>from a distance</i> : de longe; <i>from the top to the bottom</i> : de alto a basso
fog	bruma, nebula	front	
fold	plicar		
follow	sequer; succeder		
fond			

7. Appendix 2 - English-Interlingua Word List

---

fronte;	benes; merces, mercantia
<i>in front of:</i> ante, avante	grant
full	accordar; conceder; impartir
plen	grass
fun	herba
divertimento; amusement; joco	gray
funny	gris
comic; humoristic; risibile; estranie	great
furniture	grande
mobiles; mobiliario	green
further	verde; crude
<i>adj</i> additional; subsequente;	grip
<i>adv</i> plus; de plus, item	<i>n</i> prisa; serramento; manico; valise
game	[F]; grippe [F];
joco; partita;	<i>v</i> sasir; prender; impugnar; serrar
[Hunting] chassa	grow
gate	crescer; devenir, facer se; cultivar
porta	growl
gather	grunnir
colliger, leger; recolliger, recoltar;	guess
assemblar, attruppar, reunir	divinar; conjecturar
get	guilty
acquirer; recipar; obtener; procurar;	culpabile
contraher; devenir	gun
girl	cannon; fusil; pistola, revolver [A]
puera, pupa	hair
give	capillo, pilo; capillatura
dar, donar	half
glad	<i>adj</i> medie;
contente, felice	<i>adv</i> medio;
gladly	<i>n</i> medietate
voluntari	hall
glass	hall [A]; entrata; corridor; sala
vitro;	hammer
<i>glasses:</i> berillos	martello
glove	hand
guanto	mano
go	handle
ir, vader	<i>n</i> manico; ansa;
goat	<i>v</i> manear; palpar; commerciar in,
capra	vender
gold	hang
auro	pender; appender; suspender
good	happen
bon	evenir, occurrer, advenir, accider
good-by	happy
adeo, adieu [F]	felice
goods	harbor

hard	porto <i>adj</i> dur; difficile; <i>adv</i> forte, fortemente	hitherto	usque nunc, usque ora
hardly	a pena; quasi	hold	tener; detener; retener; continer, caper
hat	cappello	hole	cavo; apertura; foramine
hate	odiar	holiday	die feriate; holidays: ferias
have,	haber	hollow	cave; cavernose
hay	feno	home	<i>n</i> focar, home [A]; <i>adv</i> a domo, a casa; <i>at the home of:</i> a presso de, in domo de
head	capite, testa; chef	hook	croc, hamo; unco; uncino
health	sanitate	hope	spero, sperantia
heap	cumulo, pila	horn	cornio; trompa
hear	audir	horse	cavallo, equo
heart	corde	hot	calide, calorose
heat	<i>n</i> calor	house	<i>n</i> domo, casa
heaven	celo	how	como; <i>how many, how much:</i> quante
heavy	pesante, ponderose, grave	however	comocunque; nonobstante, totevia
help	adjutar, adjuvar, juvar; auxiliar; assistere; succurrere	hunger	fame
here	hic, ci	hunt	chassar, venar; cercar
hide	<i>v</i> celar	hurry	haste, pressa
high	alte	hurt	facere mal a; nocere; ferire; penare; dolere
hill	colle, collina	husband	marito, sposo
hire	ingagiare; locare	hut	barraca, cabana
hit	batter, colpare; ferire; percutere		

## 7.3. I - L

ice	glacie; gelato	jewel	
if	si; <i>if not</i> : si non; <i>if only</i> : dum, si solmente	joiel	
ill	<i>adj</i> mal; malade; <i>adv</i> mal	job	labor; empleo, position; opera
in	<i>prep</i> in; <i>adv</i> intra; intro <i>inasmuch as</i> : viste que; post que; in tanto que	join	junger (se); unir (se); afiliari (se con), associar (se con); [Carp.] indentar
inch	uncia, pollice	journey	viage; jornata
increase	crescer; accrescer, augmentar	joy	gaudio; delecto
indeed	jam; vermente, in effecto	jump	saltar, salir
ink	tinta	just	<i>adj</i> juste, eque; <i>adv</i> precisemente, exactemente; justo; solmente; <i>just now</i> : jam, actualmente
-in-law	affin; <i>father-in-law</i> : patre affin	keep	conservar, servir; guardar; retener; sanctificar, festar
inn	albergo	kettle	caldiera
inside	<i>adj</i> interior, interne; <i>n</i> interior; <i>adv</i> intra; intro	key	clave; [Mus.] tono
instead:	in su loco, in loco de illo; <i>instead of</i> : in loco de, in vice de	kick	calcar, dar un colpo de pede
insurance	assecurantia	kill	occider
into	in	kind	<i>n</i> specie, genere, classe, sorta
inward	<i>adj</i> interior, interne; <i>inward(s)</i> : <i>adv</i> intro	kind	<i>adj</i> benigne; amabile
iron	ferro	king	rege
island	insula	kiss	basiar
jelly	gelea	kitchen	cocina, culina
		knee	genu, geniculo
		knife	cultello; cultro
		knock	colpar; batter

knot	nodo	leave	lassar; partir; quitar; legar; <i>be left</i> : restar
know	saper; cognoscer; <i>not to know</i> : ignorar	left	sinistre, leve
lack	carer; mancar	leg	gamba; pede
lady	dama, seniora; Lady [A]	lend	prestar
land	<i>n</i> terra; pais; terreno; <i>v</i> abordar, disbarcar; atterrar	less	minus (de)
large	grande	lesson	lection
last	<i>adj</i> ultime; <i>last (year)</i> : (le anno) passate	lest	(a fin) que non
last	<i>v</i> durar; continuar; permaner	let	lassar; permittre de; locar
late	<i>adj</i> tardive; in retardo; decedite; <i>adv</i> tarde; in retardo	level	<i>n</i> nivello; <i>adj</i> plan, platte; a nivello
latter	-; <i>the latter</i> : iste	lie	<i>v</i> 1. jacer; cubar; esser situate; 2. mentir
laugh	rider	life	vita
law	lege; directo	lift	<i>n</i> ascensor, lift [A]; levamento, altiamento
lawyer	advocato	lift	<i>v</i> levar, elevar, altiar, realtiar
lay	poner	light	<i>n</i> lumine; <i>adj</i> clar; luminose
lazy	pigre	light	<i>adj</i> leve
lead	<i>n</i> plumbo	light	<i>v</i> accender, incender; illuminar
lead	<i>v</i> ducer, conducir; guidar, menar	like	<i>adj</i> simile, affin; <i>prep</i> como
leaf	folio	like	<i>v</i> amar; gustar
learn	apprender	likely	<i>adj</i> verisimile, verosimilante; probabile; <i>adv</i> probabilemente
least	<i>adj</i> minime, le minus; <i>adv</i> le minus; <i>at least</i> : al minus	lip	<i>n</i> labio
leather	corio		

## 7. Appendix 2 - English-Interlingua Word List

---

listen	ascoltar	loose	distaccate; disligate; disfrenate; libere; laxe
little	<i>adj</i> parve; pauc; <i>adv</i> pauc; <i>n</i> pauc; <i>a little</i> : un pauc (de); alike, aliquanto	lord	<i>n</i> senior, domino; castellano; Lord [A]
live	viver; habitar	lose	perder
load	cargar; onerar	lot	sorte, destino; lot; parcella; partita
lock	<i>v</i> serrar	loud	alte
long	<i>adj/adv</i> longe; <i>long ago</i> : pridem; <i>as long as</i> : dum, durante que	love	<i>v</i> amar; <i>n</i> amor
look	reguardar, mirar; <i>look!</i> : ecce!	low	basse
		lucky	fortunate
		lunch	lunch [A], prandio

### 7.4. M - P

mad	folle, insan, demente, alienate; irate; furibunde, furiose; rabide, rabiose	maritage;	2. flammifero
mail	posta; currero, correspondentia	match	<i>v</i> equalar; appariar
main	principal; major	may	poter
make	facere; fabricar; confectionar; render	meal	repasto
male	mascule, masculin	mean	<i>n</i> medio; means: medios; ressources [F]; <i>by means of</i> : per medio de, per
man	homine; viro	mean	<i>v</i> significar; voler dicer; intender; proponer se; <i>mean well</i> : haber bon intentiones
manage	diriger; administrar; manear; arrangiar se	meanwhile	intertanto, interim
manager	director, administrator, gerente	meat	carne
many	multe	meet	incontrar; ir al incontro de; facer le cognoscentia de; satisfacer; incontrar se, reunir se
market	mercato	melt	
match	<i>n</i> 1. equal; par; [Sports] partita, match [A];		

funder; disgelar; dissolver	Senhor [P], Signor(e) [I], Herr [G], etc.
mere	Mrs.
simple, mer	seniora;
merry	<i>also</i> : Mrs. [A], Señora [H], Madame [F], Senhora [P], Signora [I], Frau [G], etc
gai, alegre;	
<i>Merry Christmas!</i> : Felice Natal!	
middle	much
medio; centro	multe;
milk	<i>as much as</i> : quanto
<i>n</i> lacte;	mud
<i>v</i> mulger	fango
mill	murder
molino; fabrica	assassinar
mind	must
<i>v</i> facer attention a; attender; guardar;	deber
obedir;	nail
<i>I don't mind (that...)</i> : non me importa (que... )	clavo; ungula
Miss	narrow
senioretta;	stricte; limitate; illiberal
<i>also</i> : Miss [A], Señorita [H], Senhorinha [P], Signorina [I], Fräulein [G], etc.	near
miss	<i>adj</i> vicin, proxime, propinque; <i>adv</i> juxta, presso;
non trovar; non colpar; non sasisr;	<i>prep</i> juxta, presso, apud
perder; carer;	neck
<i>to be missing</i> : esser absente, mancar	collo
Monday	need
lunedì	indiger; deber; haber necessitate de
money	needle
moneta; pecunia	aco, agulia
monkey	neighbor
simia	vicino; proximo
month	neither
mense	ni;
more	<i>neither... nor</i> : ni... ni
plus (de)	net
moreover	<i>n</i> rete
de plus, in plus	never
morning	nunquam, non... jammais
matino; matinata	nevertheless
mouse	nonobstante, totevia
mus	newspaper
mouth	jornal
bucca; imbuccatura	next
Mr.	sequente; proxime;
senior;	<i>next to</i> : juxta
<i>also</i> : Mr. [A], M. [F], Señor [H],	nice
	amabile; sympathic; placente; bon;

7. Appendix 2 - English-Interlingua Word List

---

belle; gentil; fin; exacte, precise	old
night	vetule, vetere
nocte	on
no	super, sur;
<i>adj</i> nulle;	<i>on top</i> : in alto, supra
<i>adv</i> no, non;	once
<i>no longer</i> : non... jam	olim, un vice;
nobody	<i>at once</i> : jam, immediateamente; simul
nemo, nullo	one
noise	<i>adj</i> un;
ruito, strepito	<i>pron</i> uno, on;
none	<i>one's</i> : su;
nulle; nemo, nullo	<i>one another</i> : le un le altere, le unes le alteres
noon	only
meridie	<i>adj</i> sol, unic;
nor	<i>adv</i> solmente, solo
ni	open
nose	aperir; displicar
naso	or
not	o
non;	order
<i>not any</i> : nulle;	<i>n</i> ordine; mandato;
<i>not any more</i> : non... plus;	<i>in order that</i> : a fin que, quo;
<i>not at all</i> : nullemente;	<i>in order to</i> : a fin de, pro;
<i>not yet</i> : nondum	<i>v</i> ordinar; commandar; mandar;
nothing	commissionar
nihil, nil	other
now	altere
nunc, ora;	otherwise
<i>now... then</i> : ora... ora, nunc . . . nunc	alias, de altere maniera; si non
nowhere	ought to:
nusquam, in nulle parte	(io, tu, etc.) deberea
nurse	out
<i>n</i> infirmera; nutrice; nurse [A];	foras; extinguite;
<i>v</i> curar; nutrir; allactar, lactar	[Sports] out [A];
nut	<i>out of</i> : ex, de; extra; foras de; sin; a
nuce	causa de;
o'clock	<i>out of doors</i> : foras (de casa)
-; one o'clock: un hora;	outside
<i>two o'clock</i> : duo horas	<i>adv</i> foras, extra;
of	<i>prep</i> extra, foras de;
de	<i>adj</i> exterior, externe;
off	<i>outside of</i> : foras de, extra
via	outward:
office	<i>adj</i> externe, exterior; outward(s)
officio; bureau [F]	<i>adv</i> a foras
often	oven
subinde, frequentemente	



furno	pietate; compassion; commiseration; misericordia
over	place
super, supra; trans; plus de	loco; placia
overcome	play
vincer, superar; surmontar; <i>to be overcome (by)</i> : succumber (a)	jocar; sonar
owe	please
deber; <i>owing to</i> : debite a, gratias a	placer, agradar; <i>please!</i> : si il vos place!; (io) preca!
own	pleasure
<i>adj</i> proprie	placer; agradamento; grado; delicia
pain	plow
pena, dolor, mal	aratro
paint	pocket
<i>n</i> color; fardo; pinger; picturar; fardar	tasca
pair	point
par; copula	puncto; puncta
pan	poison
patella; casserola	veneno, toxico
past	polish
<i>adj</i> passate; <i>n</i> passato; <i>prep/adv</i> preter, ultra; post	polir; lustrar
paste	poor
pasta; colla	povre; inferior; mal
path	pot
sentiero, semita; curso; passage; via	pote, olla; marmita
pay	pound
pagar	libra
peace	pour
pace	infunder
pencil	powder
stilo (de graphite)	pulvere
people	power
populo; gente	poter; potentia
perhaps	praise
forsan	laudar, commendar, celebrar
pick	pray
colliger, leger; eliger, seliger, selectionar; beccar; plumar	precar, orar
piece	presently
pecia; [Theat., Mus.] piece [F]	tosto, cito
pig	pretty
porco	<i>adj</i> bellette; <i>adv</i> bastante, assatis
pin	price
spinula; cavilia; quillia	precio
pity	print
	imprimer; [Photog.] copiar
	proud

## 7. Appendix 2 - English-Interlingua Word List

---

fer, orgoliose  
 provided (that):  
 a condition que, dum  
 pull  
 traher, trainar, tirar  
 purpose  
 proposito; fin; objecto

push  
 pulsar  
 put  
 poner; placiari;  
*put on*: vestir;  
*put off*: postponer;  
*put to sleep*: addormir

### 7.5. Q - T

quarrel  
 querela; lite, litigio  
 queen  
 regina  
 quick  
 celere, rapide; preste; vive  
 quite  
 toto; completamente; bastante, satis  
 race  
*n* 1. racia; stirpe;  
 2. cursa;  
*v* hastar; currer un cursa  
 rain  
 pluver  
 raise  
 levar, altiar, sublevar; elevar; cultivar;  
 eriger; augmentar  
 rather  
 plus tosto, potius; satis, assatis,  
 bastante  
 raw  
 crude;  
*raw material*: materia prime  
 reach  
 attinger; passar; extender se a  
 read  
*v* leger  
 ready  
 preste, parate; preparate  
 really  
 vermente, realmente  
 record  
 registro; acto; memoria; disco;  
 [Sports, etc.] record [A]  
 red  
 rubie  
 remember  
 memorar, rememorar se; retener

rent  
*n* location  
 repeatedly  
 plure vices, subinde  
 rest  
*v* reposar; appoiar se  
 revenge  
 vengiantia  
 review  
*n* revista; recension;  
*v* revider; recenser  
 rice  
 ris  
 ride  
*v* ir; cavalcar  
 right  
*n* directo, jure; dextera, directa;  
*adj* directe, juste; dextere;  
*to be right*: haber ration;  
*adv* justo; correctemente; al dextera;  
*right away*: jam, immediatemente  
 ring  
*n* anello, anulo; rondo;  
 [Sports] ring [A]  
 ring  
*v* sonar  
 ripe  
 matur  
 rise  
 surger; ascender; augmentar; levar se;  
 sublevar se, insurger  
 river  
 riviera, fluvio  
 road  
 via, cammino  
 roar  
 rugir, fremer  
 rod

virga; canna	sablo, arena
roof	Saturday
tecto	sabbato
room	save
camera; spatio	v salvar; sparniar; economisar
root	save
radice; radical	prep salvo, excepte
rope	saw
fun; corda	n serra
rough	say
aspere; rude, grossier	dicer
row	scarcely
n fila; linea; serie	a pena
row	scissors
v remar	cisorios
rub	screw
fricar	vite
rubber	sea
cauchu; gumma elastic	mar
rule	search
n regula; dominio, governmento;	cercar, recercar; querer, perquirer
v regnar, governar; regular	seat
run	sede
currer	see
rush	vider;
currer; accelerar; hastar	see!: ecce!
sad	seed
triste	semine
safe	seem
adj secur; salve	sembler, similar, parer
sail	sell
n vela;	vender
v navigar; partir	send
sailor	mandar, inviar
marinero; nauta	set
sake	poner; establir; fixar; componer;
-, for the sake of: pro; pro le amor de	adjustar; incastrar
salt	settle
sal	colonisar; establir (se), decider;
same	convenir
mesme; idem;	several
at the same time: simul; al mesme	plure
tempore;	shade
in the same place: ibidem, in le	umbra; tinta; nuance [F]
mesme loco	shake
sample	succuter; agitar; tremar, trepidar
exemplo, monstra	shame
sand	vergonia

7. Appendix 2 - English-Interlingua Word List

---

share	parte, portion; contingente; [Fin.] action	since	<i>adv</i> de post, depois; <i>prep</i> de, ab, depois; <i>conj</i> de post que, depois que; proque, perque
sharp	acute; trenchante, acutiante	sing	cantar
sheep	ove	single	singule; celibe
shelf	planca	sink	submerger (se); declinar; subsider
shine	brillar; lucer, relucer, splendor, resplender; polir, lustrar	sister	soror
ship	nave	sit	seder
shirt	camisa	size	dimension; mesura; grandor
shock	choccar, scandalisar; percuter;	skin	pelle; cute
shocking	choccante, shocking [A]	skirt,	gonna, gonnella
shoe	scarpa, calceo	sky	celo
shoot	tirar; fusilar	sleep	<i>v</i> dormir; <i>n</i> somno
shop	magazin, boteca; officina, fabrica	slip	<i>n</i> glissada; passo false; error, lapso; [Clothing] subgonnella; [Naut.] cala; scheda, schedula; [Hort.] graffo; <i>v</i> glissar; laber; errar
shore	costa	slope	inclination; declination; montata; costa, scarpa
short	breve, curte; brusc	slow	<i>adj</i> lente; tardive
shoulder	humero, spatula	small	parve
shout	critar, clamar; vociferar	smell	oler, odorar; olfacer
show	<i>v</i> monstrar, demonstrar, facer vider; ostender; exhibir; <i>n</i> monstra; exhibition; spectaculo	smile	surrider
shut	clauder	smoke	fumar
sick	malade	smooth	lisie, unite
side	latere; partito	sneeze	
silk	seta		
silver	argento		

sternutar	speak
snow	parlar
nive	spell
so	v orthographiar
si, talmente; tanto;	spend
<i>not so... as</i> : non si... como, non	expende, dispende; passar
tanto... como;	spite
<i>so many, so much</i> : tante;	despecto; malitia;
<i>so that</i> : de maniera que, quo	<i>in spite of</i> : in despecto de, malgrado,
soap	nonobstante
sapon	spoil
sock	guastar, vitiar; deteriorar (se); putrer
[Clothing] calcetta	spoon
soft	n coclear
molle; dulce; blande; tenere;	spot
<i>softly</i> : in voce basse	macula; loco, localitate
soil	spread
n solo	extender; propagar
some	spring
alicun; un pauc (de); unes, unos	n 1. primavera, ver;
somebody	2. resorto;
alicuno	3. fontana; fonte;
something	v salir, saltar
alique	square
sometimes	quadrato; esquadra; placia
aliquando; a vices	stage
somewhat	[Theat.] scena;
alique, aliquanto	grado, stadio
somewhere	stairs
alicubi, usquam	scala
son	stamp
filio	n timbro; marca; colpo de pede;
soon	v calcar; timbrar; stampar
tosto, proximemente	stand
sorrow	star; supportar, tolerar
dolor, dolo; tristessa	star
sorry	stella; astere; astro;
triste; affligite;	[Motion Pictures] star [A]
<i>to be sorry</i> ; doler se; deplorar,	start
regrettar;	v comenciar; lancear, iniciar;
<i>I'm sorry!</i> : pardono!, excusa me!	n comenciamento; principio;
south	[Sports] start [A]
sud, meridie	statement
spade	enunciation; declaration, assertion;
pala;	[Com.] extracto de conto
[Cards] spada, picca	stay
spare	remaner, restar; demorar, sojornar
sparniar	steal

7. Appendix 2 - English-Interlingua Word List

---

robar, furar	tender; tirar; extender
steam	strike
vapor	colpar, batter, ferir; impinger;
steel	percuter; exoperar; sonar
aciero; fusil	string
steep	corda; cordon; chorda
ardue; scarpate; abrupte; precipitose	strong
stem	forte
stirpe;	struggle
[Bot.] pedunculo;	luctar, combatter, debatter se
[Gram.] thema	such
step	tal
passo; scalon, grado	sudden
stick	subite, subitanee;
<i>n</i> baston; canna	<i>suddenly</i> : subito, presto
stick	sugar
<i>v</i> adherer; collar	sucro
stiff	suit
rigide, inflexible; difficile;	<i>n</i> [Clothing] habito;
ceremoniose	[Cards] color;
still	[Law] processo, causa
<i>adv</i> adhuc, ancora; totevia,	suit
nonobstante	<i>v</i> convenir (a); ir (ben) a
stocking	summer
calcea; calcetta	estate
stone	sun
petra; rocca; lapide; calculo; pepita	sol
stop	Sunday
cessar; arrestar; stoppar	dominica
store	supper
boteca, magazin; -eria;	cena; souper [F]
<i>bookstore</i> : libreria;	supply
<i>grocery store</i> : specieria	suppler; fornir; approvisionar;
storm	provider
tempesta	swear
story	jurar; blasphemar
1. historia; conto; fabula; mentita;	sweet
articulo;	dulce
2. etage [F]	swim
stove	natar
furnello; estufa; calorifero	sword
straight	spada, gladio
recte; directe	tail
strange	cauda
estranie	take
street	prender; acceptar; conducir
strata	talk
stretch	<i>v</i> parlar; garrular;

	<i>n</i> conversation; discurso, conferentia		sete
tall	alte	this	iste
taste	gustar; degustar	though	<i>adv</i> nonobstante; <i>conj</i> ben que; <i>as though</i> : como si; <i>even though</i> : etiam si, mesmo si
tea	the	thread	filo
teach	docer, inseniar; instruer; professor	throat	guttire; gorga; jugulo
tear	<i>n</i> lacrima	through	per; a transverso (de); durante
tell	dicer; contar, narrar	throw	jectar
temper	disposition; natural; humor, temperamento	thumb	pollice
tempt	tentar	thunder	<i>n</i> tonitro; <i>v</i> tonar; fulminar
than	que	Thursday	jovedi
thank	regratiar, render gratias	thus	si, assi
that	<i>dem adj</i> ille, celle; <i>rel pron</i> que, le qual; <i>conj</i> que	tie	<i>n</i> ligamine; [Mus.] ligatura; cravata; [R.R.] transversa; <i>v</i> ligar; nodar
the	le; <i>the... the</i> : quanto... tanto	tight	stricte; serrate; tense; impermeabile; parsimoniose
then	tunc, alora; pois, ergo, dunque	till	usque
there	ibi, illac; <i>there!</i> : ecce! <i>there is, there are</i> : il ha, il es	time	tempore; vice; <i>at any time</i> : aliquando, unquam; <i>at another time</i> : alias; <i>what time is it?</i> : que hora es?
therefore	ergo, igitur, dunque	tin	stanno; (cassa de) latta
thick	spisse; crasse; dense	tired	fatigate; lasse
thief	latron, fur, robator	to	a
thin	magre; rar; tenue	today	hodie
thing	cosa		
think	pensar; creder		
thirst			

## 7. Appendix 2 - English-Interlingua Word List

toe	negotio, commercio, mercantia; mestiero; intercambio; troco
digito	
together	train
insimul, juncto; simul	traino, suite [F]; cauda; [R.R.] traino, convoyo
toilet	travel
toilette [F]; water-closet [A], W.C. [A]	viagiar, itinerar
tomorrow	tray
deman	tabuliero (de servicio)
tongue	treat
lingua; timon	tractar; [Med.] curar, medicar; regalar
tonight	tree
iste nocte	arbore
too	trick
etiam, anque; nimis, troppo; <i>too much, too many</i> : nimie, troppo (de)	<i>n</i> artificio; maneo; prestigio; inganno; <i>v</i> dupar; deciper; ingannar
tool	trouble
utensile; instrumento; ingenio	pena; enoio, molestia; difficultate
top	trousers
1. alto; summitate; 2. turbine	pantalones
touch	truck
toccar, tanger; tastar; continger; emotionar	camion [F]
toward(s):	try
verso	essayar, tentar, experir; probar
town	Tuesday
urbe; burgo	martedi
toy	turn
joculo	tornar; rotar; devenir
track	twice
pista, carriera; tracia, vestigio; rails	bis
trade	twist
	<i>v</i> torquer

### 7.6. U - Z

ugly	<i>up to</i> : usque (a)
fede	very
uncle	<i>adv</i> multo; <i>adj</i> mesme, ipse
oncle	vessel
under	vaso; vascello, nave
sub, subtus, infra	view
unless	vista; prospecto; opinion
a minus que; si non	wait
until	attender; <i>wait on</i> : servir
usque (a)	wake
up	
in alto;	



eveliar; eveliar se	<i>as well as</i> : tanto como
walk	wet
<i>v</i> ambular, ir a pede; promenar se;	<i>adj</i> humide;
<i>n</i> promenada; ambulatura; allée [F],	<i>v</i> humectar, molliar; rigar
sentiero, semita	what
wall	<i>adj</i> que, qual;
muro; pariete; muralia, vallo	<i>pron</i> que, le qual;
want	<i>conj</i> que
<i>v</i> voler; desirar; mancar; carer	whatever
war	qualcunque
guerra, bello	wheel
warm	rota
<i>adj</i> calide; tepide	when
warn	quando
prevenir; admoner	whenever
wash	quandocunque
lavar	where
waste	ubi; quo
guastar; dissipar; dispender	wherefore
watch	quare, quo
<i>n</i> 1. horologio;	wherever
2. vigilia	ubique, ubicunque
wax	whether
cera	si
way	which
via, cammino; maniera, modo, guisa;	<i>adj</i> qual;
curso;	<i>pron</i> que, le qual
<i>by the way</i> : a proposito;	while
<i>by way of</i> : via	dum, durante que
weak	whip
debile; fragile; insipide	flagello
wear	white
portar; usar	blanc, albe
weather	who
tempore	qui; que, le qual
Wednesday	whoever
mercuridi	quicunque
week	whole
septimana	<i>adj</i> integre; integral; indemne, tote
weigh	<i>n</i> total, toto
pesar; ponderar	whom
welcome	que, qui
<i>v</i> dar le benvenita a;	whose
<i>adj</i> benvenite	de que, de qui, del qual, cuje
well	why
<i>n</i> puteo	perque, proque
well	wide
<i>adv</i> ben;	large, late

## 7. Appendix 2 - English-Interlingua Word List

---

wife	sposa, uxor	<i>to give one's word: dar fide</i>
wild	salvage; fer	work labor, travalio, obra, opera; factura;
will	voluntate; voler; grado; [Law] testamento	works fabrica; mecanismo; fortificationes
win	ganiar; triumphar; vincer	world mundo, terra
wind	<i>n</i> vento	worm verme
wind	<i>v</i> serpentar; bobinar; involver; cargar (un horologio)	worry inquietude, anxietate, enoio
window	fenestra; vitrina; vitriera	worse <i>adj</i> plus real, peyor; <i>adv</i> plus real, pejo; <i>so much the worse: tanto pejo</i>
winter	hiberno	worth valor; <i>to be worth: valer</i>
wire	filo (metallic); telegramma	worthy digne; meritori
wise	sage, sapiente	wound vulnere, plaga
with	con	wrong <i>adj</i> incorrecte, false, improprie; <i>n</i> injuria, torto; <i>to be wrong: haber torto, non haber ration</i>
within	intra; in	yard corte; [Meas.] yard [A]
without	<i>prep</i> sin; extra	yellow jalne
woman	femina	yes si
wonder	<i>v</i> meraviliar; esser curiose; demandar se	yesterday heri
wonderful	meraviliose, prodigiose; admirabile, delectabile	yet totevia; nonobstante; ancora, etiam; <i>as yet: usque nunc, usque ora;</i> <i>not yet: nondum</i>
wood	ligno; foreste, silva, bosco	young juvene
wool	lana	
word	parola, verbo, vocabulo;	

## 8. Appendix 3 - sample texts

### 8.1. Colonisation del Nove Anglaterra

*(Extracto de: DEL DEMOCRATIA IN AMERICA)*

*Traducite del texto original francese per Erich Berger*

---

Il es in le colonias anglese del nord, melio cognoscite sub le nomine de Statos del Nove Anglaterra, que se ha combinate le duo o tres ideas principal que forma le base del theoria social del Statos Unite.

Le principios del Nove Anglaterra se ha in le comenciamento expandite in le statos vicin; postea illos ha ganiate pauc a pauc le plus distantes, e finalmente, si il es permissibile exprimer se assi, illos ha 'penetrare' le confederation integre. Ultra le limites de isto, illos influentia nunc tote le mundo american. Le civilisation del Nove Anglaterra ha essite como iste focos incendite super le summitates, que, post haber expandite lor calor circa se mesme, tinge ancora de lor claritate le ultime confinios del horizonte.

Le foundation del Nove Anglaterra ha offerite un nove spectaculo; toto esseva ibi singular e original.

Quasi omne colonias ha habite como prime habitantes homines sin education e sin ressources, que le miseria e le misconducta pulsava foris del pais que les habeva vidite nascer, o speculatores avide e interprenditores industrial. Il ha colonias que non pote reclamar mesmo un tal origine. San Domingo ha essite fundate per piratas, e in nostre tempore le cortes de Anglaterra se carga de popular Australia.

Le emigrantes qui veniva establir se super le costas del Nove Anglaterra, pertineva omnes al classes opulente de lor patria matre. Lor reunion super le solo american presentava ab le origines le phenomeno singular de un societate ubi se trovava ni grande seniores ni plebe, e, pro assi dicer, ni povros ni riccos. Il habeva, proportionalmente, un plus grande massa de lumine expandite inter iste homines que intra alicun nation europeee de nostre dies. Omnes, forsan sin exceptar un sol, habeva recipite un education assatis avantiante, e alicunos inter illes habeva facite cognoscer se in Europa per lor talentos e lor scientia. Le altere colonias habeva essite fundate per aventureros sin familias; le emigrantes del Nove Anglaterra apportava con illes admirabile elementos de ordine e de moralitate; illes vadeva al deserto accompaniate de lor uxores e infantes. Sed lo que les distingueva super toto de omne alteros, esseva le objecto de lor interpresa. Il non esseva le necessitate que les fortiava abandonar lor pais. Illes lassava ibi un invidiabile position social e medios pecuniari

assecurate. Non plus vadeva illes al nove mundo pro ameliorar lor situation e accrescer lor ricchessas. Illes se rapeva del dulcor de lor patria pro obedir a un necessitate purmente intellectual: exponente se al miserias inevitabile del exilio, illes voleva facer triumphar un idea.

Le emigrantes, o como illes mesme si ben se appellava, le peregrinos ('pilgrims'), pertineva a ille secta del Anglaterra, a que le austeritate de su mores haveva facite dar le nomine de puritan. Le puritanismo non esseva solmente un doctrina religiose; illo se confundeva etiam in alicun punctos con le plus absolute theorias democratic e republican. De illac illo haveva su adversarios le plus periculose.

Persequite per le governmento del patria matre, ferite in le rigor de lor principios per le progression quotidian del societate in le medio del qual illes viveva, le puritanos cercava un terra que esserea tanto barbare e tanto abandonate per le mundo que ibi il esserea ancora permittite a uno viver de su maniera e precar Deo in libertate.

Le passiones religiose e politic, que lacerava le imperio britannic durante tote le regno de Carolo Primo, pulsava omne anno nove greges de sectarios super le costas de America. In Anglaterra le foco del puritanismo continuava trovar se locate in le classes medie. Il es de intra le classes medie que sortiva le majoritate del emigrantes. Le population del Nove Anglaterra se accresceva rapidamente e durante que le hierarchia del rangos classificava le homines in le patria matre ancora de maniera despotic, le colonia presentava de plus in plus le nove spectaculo de un societate homogenee in omne su partes.

Le democratia, tal que le antiquitate non haveva osate soniar lo, exiva toto grande e toto armate del medio del vetule societate feudal. Contente de remover a longe de se germines de perturbation e elementos de nove revolutiones, le governmento anglese videva iste numerose emigration sin regrettar lo. Illo lo favorisava mesmo al limites de su poter e pareva a pena occupar se del destino de illes qui veniva super le solo american a cercar un asylo contra le duressa de su leges.

On poterea dicer que illo regardava le Nove Anglaterra como un region livrate al sonios del imagination, un region que on debeva abandonar al libere essayos del innovatores.

Le colonias anglese - e isto esseva un del causas principal de lor prosperitate - ha semper gaudite de plus libertate interior e de plus independentia politic que le colonias del altere populos. Sed in nulle parte iste principio de libertate esseva applicate plus completamente que in le Statos del Nove Anglaterra.

Le civilisation anglo-american es le producto de duo elementos perfectemente distincte que alibi se ha frequentemente facite guerra, sed que in America on ha succedite a incorporar de alicun maniera le un in le altere e a combinar miraculosemente. Io vole parlar del spirito de religion e del spirito de libertate.

## 8.2. Le ordine

**Anton Chekhov**

*Traducite del texto original russe per Nicolai Rabeneek.*

---

Registrar collegial Lev Pustiakov, preceptor al progymnasio militar, habitava juxta su amico, le locotenente Ledenzov. A iste ille se dirigeva le matino del nove anno.

"Ascolta, Grisha, lo que io vole demandar te," ille diceva al locotenente post le costumari gratulationes del nove anno, "io non te importunarea si il non esseva assolutamente necessari. Presta me pro hodie, mi columbetto, tu ordine de Stanislas. Nam io dina hodie al domo del mercante Spichkin. E tu le cognosce, iste bandito Spichkin: ille adora ordines e omnes que non ha qualcunqu in le butoniera o pendente al collo ille considera como quasi villanos. E de plus, tu sape, ille ha duo filias... Nastia e Zina... Io te preca como amico... Tu me comprende, mi caro. Face me iste favor."

Rubescente e balbutiante Pustiakov presentava su demanda, intertanto regardante timidemente le porta. Le locotenente blasphemava, il es ver, sed consentiva.

A duo horas post meridie Pustiakov vadeva in un fiacre al Spichkines; ille habeva le pellicia un pauc aperite e regardava su pectore. Ibi radiava le auro e brillava le colores de email del Stanislas prestate.

"De un maniera o altere on senti pro se mesme plus de respecto," pensava le preceptor e tussettava. "Un parve cosa, pote valer cinque rublos al plus, e causa nonobstante tante sensation!"

Quando ille arrivava al domo de Spichkin ille aperiva le pellicia largemente e se poneva sin haste a pagar le cochiero. Il le pareva que le cochiero se petrificava al vista del epaulettes, del buttones, e del Stanislas. Contente de se mesme Pustiakov tussettava e entrava in le domo. Quando ille se disvestiva de su pellicia in le antecamera ille jectava un reguardo in le sala. Ibi un dece-cinquena de personas sedeva jam al longe tabula a dinar e mangiava. On audiva voces e le tintinnar de plattos.

"Qui ha sonate ibi?" se faceva audir le voce del maestro del domo. "Ah, Lev Nikolaich! Entra, io vos preca, vos es un pauc tarde sed non importa... Nos nos ha justo nunc sedite al tabula!"

Pustiakov expandeva le pectore, levava le capite, e fricante le manos entrava in le sala. Sed ibi ille videva alique horrible. Al tabula, juxta Zina, sedeva su collega Tremblant, preceptor del lingua francese. Monstrar le ordine al francese significava provocar un multude de questiones le plus desagradabile, significava facer se ridicule e contemptibile pro semper ... Le prime pensata de Pustiakov esseva de aveller le ordine o de curre retro; sed le ordine esseva attaccate multo solidemente e un retraite esseva jam impossibile. Hastivissimo ille coperiva le ordine con su dextera, se faceva le plus parve possibile inclinante se

## 8. Appendix 3 - sample texts

---

disgratiosamente in un saluto general sin serrar le mano a alicuno, e se sedeva pesantemente super le sol sede non occupate exactemente opposite a su collega, le francese.

"Ha bibite nimis, evidentementee!" pensava Spichkin vidente su facie confuse.

Un platto de suppa esseva placiante ante Pustiakov. Ille prendeva le coclear in le mano sinistre, sed quia il occorreva a ille que in societate respectabile il non es permittite mangiar con le mano sinistre, ille declarava que ille habeva jam dinare e non poteva mangiar plus.

"Io ha jam mangiate... Merci..." ille balbutiava. "Io visitava mi oncle, le protopresbytero Yeleiev, e ille me persuadeva de... de... dinar a presso de ille."

Le anima de Pustiakov esseva plen de angustia constringente e de enoio irate: le suppa oleva tanto gustose e le sturion vaporate emitteva un odor inusualmente appetibile. Le preceptor tentava coperir le ordine con le mano sinistre pro liberar le dextera, sed etiam isto semblava a ille non multo conveniente.

"On lo remarcarà... Allora mi bracio jacera super tote mi pectore como si io me poneva a cantar. Domino mie, si solmente le dinar esseva finite! Io pote dinar plus tarde al albergo!"

Post le tertie platto ille regardava le francese timidemente, con un sol oculo, pro si dicer. Tremblant, qui pro alicun ration esseva multo confuse, regardava Pustiakov e etiam non mangiava. E post que le duo habeva regardate le uno le altero, illes deveniva ancora plus confuse e fixava le oculos super su plattos vacue.

"Ille lo ha remarcate, le porco!" pensava Pustiakov. "Io lo vide super su miserabile facie que ille lo ha remarcate! Le bandito es un intrigante. Jam deman ille informara le director."

Le hospite e le invitatos mangiava le quarte platto e, como le fato lo habeva determinate, illes mangiava etiam le quinte...

Un senior grande, con large nares capillute, con un naso curvate e oculos congenitalmente constringite, se levava. Ille passava le mano super su capite e exclamava:

"Eh - eh - eh... io... io... eh propone, eh, biber al salute del damas hic presente."

Le seniores se levava con ruito e elevava su bicarios. Un "hurrah" sonava a alte voces per tote le habitation. Le damas surrideva e se poneva a lassar tocar lor vitros. Pustiakov etiam se levava e prendeva su vitro in le mano sinistre.

"Lev Nikolaich, presenta per favor iste vitro a Nastasia Timofeievna!" se adressava un senior a ille e le passava al mesme tempore un bicario. "Persuade la de biber!"

A su plus grande horror Pustiakov esseva fortiate iste vice de poner su dextera in action. E finalmente le Stanislas con su banda crispate videva le lumine del die e luceva brillantemente. Le preceptor pallidiva, bassava le capite e regardava timidemente verso le francese. Iste le regardava equalmente con oculos surprise e questionante. Su labios se distorqueva in un sorriso astute e le expression confuse dispareva lentamente de su visage...

"Julij Avgustovich!" le hospite se adressava al francese. "Si il vos place, passa me ille bottilia!"

Indecisemente Tremblant extendeva su dextera verso le bottilia e... oh, qual fortuna! Pustiakov percipева un ordine super su pectore; e illo non esseva simplemente un Stanislas, illo esseva un integre Anna! Ergo etiam le francese habeva fraudate! Pustiakov erumpeva in risos de gaudio e finalmente se placiava confortabilmente super su sede... Nunc non jam esseva necessari celar le Stanislas! Ambos esseva culpabile del mesme peccato e consequentemente le uno non poteva calumniar le altero o facer le risibile...

"Ah, ah... hm!..." grunniva Spichkin quando ille videva le ordine super le pectore del preceptor.

"S-si!" diceva Pustiakov. "Il es sorprendente, Julij Avgustovich! Quante paucos inter nos esseva proponite ante le ferias! Como nos es numerose e totevia solmente vos e io ha recipite un! Es multo sur-pren-den-te!"

Tremblant nutava hilaremente e al mesme tempore exponeva le reverso sinistre de su jachetta ubi resplendeva le ordine de Anna del tertie grado.

Post le dinar Pustiakov se promenava per omne le cameras e monstrava le ordine al senioirettas. Su anima esseva leve e libere ben que le fame constringeva su stomacho.

"Si io habeva sapite alique de iste fraude," ille pensava con invidia, regardante Tremblant qui justo tunc parlava con Spichkin super ordines, "io me haberea simplemente attaccate un Vladimir. Qual damno que io non considerava illo!"

Solo iste pensata le inquietava. In omne altere respecto ille esseva integremente felice.

### 8.3. Visita al mercato

#### Apuleio

*(Extracto de: LE ASINO DE AURO)*

*Traducite del texto original latin per Erich Berger.*

---

Postquam mi effectos esseva deponite in mi camera, in mi via al banios, io primo va al Forum Cuppedinis pro emer alicun comestibiles. Ibi io vide exponite pisces splendide. Habente demandate lor precio, io lo rejecta proque illo amonta a vinti-cinque drachmas... e io los eme pro vinti.

Como io va via, Pythias, mi condiscipulo in Athenas, crucia mi cammino. Post alicun tempore ille me recognosce e hasta verso me amicalmente. Ille me imbracia e me basia affabilemente. "Mi Lucio," ille dice, "un longe tempore ha vermente passate de post que nos ha vidite nos; in facto il esseva le momento quando nos lassava nostre magistro Clytio. Sed que es le ration de tu viage a hic?" "Tu lo sapera deman," io replica. "Sed que es isto? Gratulationes! Nam io vide tu escorta e iste virgas e tu habito que justo congrue con un magistrato." "Io vigila super le precios del mercato e io es edil; e si tu desira emer alique, io lo fornira con placer." Io declinava, perque io habeva jam emite satis pisces pro mi cena. Sed post haber vidite le corbe e succutite le pisces pro obtener un melior vista de illos, Pythias diceva: "A qual precio ha tu emite iste piscalia?" "A pena," io diceva, "io poteva fortiar le piscator acciper vinti drachmas." Habente audite isto, ille sasiva immediatamente mi dextera e me duceva retro al mercato del alimentos: "E de qui," diceva ille, "ha tu emite iste vilitate?"

Io le monstra un vetulo qui sedeva in un angulo. Immediatamente Pythias, in su capacitate de edil, crita a ille con voce multo aspere: "Non mesmo mi amicos e nostre hospites estranie tu sparnia, tu qui a un tal precio valuta ti ridicule pisces e qui reduce per le caritate del comestibiles le flor de Thessalia a un imagine de solitudine equal a un rocca. Sed tu non essera impunita. Io te facera saper de qual maniera le improbos debe esser corrigite sub mi autoritate." E post jectar le contento del corbe super le solo, ille ordina a un official marchar super le pisces e fullar omnes. Contenta de su severitate mi amico Pythias me consilia vader via e dice: "Me suffice, car Lucio, iste grande vergonia del vetulo." Consternate per su actos e multo stupefacte, io vade al banios, private per le forte mesuras de mi providente condiscipulo e de mi moneta e de mi cena.



## 8.4. Energia

**Watson Davis**

*(Articulo del serie: IN LE FUTURO)*

*Traducite del texto original anglese (Science News Letter, 1950, 13, p. 199) per Erich Berger.*

---

Energia es necessari pro toto que ocurre in le mundo. In tempores passate le plus grande parte del energia applicate esseva fornite per le fortia muscular del homines e del animales domestic.

Hodie carbon, petroleo, aqua, e ligno nos da le grosso del fortia motor. Vostre musculos e mies es exempte de labor nimis dur.

Fundamentalmente tote le energia de nostre terra veni del sol. Le calor e le lumine del sol - octo minutas distante de nos in tempore de viage del radiation - es cosa vital.

Tote carbon e tote petroleo es lumine fossilisate del sol. Nos vive del energia immagazinate de eras passate. Nos expende extraordinari ricchessas accumulate eones ante que nostre ultime atavos comenciava evolver. Si nos non habeva tanto de illos, omne pecia de carbon e omne gutta de petroleo esserea como tante auro o uranium. Illos es irrenovabile.

Le energia que nos cape per subjugar le cadita de aqua retenite per grande dicas, es le production de iste anno. Ita etiam le ligno que nos arde usa un lumine solar relativamente recente, un energia solar que ha un etate de solo alicun annos. Le energia del homine veni del calorias de nostre alimento usualmente cresce solo alicun menses retro.

Per via experimental le fission del uranium - como in le bomba atomic - ha aperite un nove fundo de energia item irrenovabile e extreme limite malgrado le facto que un libra de materia integralmente convertite in energia fornirea tote le fortia electric del Statos Unite de America pro quasi un mense.

Nos certo non es al bordo penose de un carentia de energia sed un reguardo al futuro deberea inquietar nos pro le amor de nostre infantes.

Le carbon e le petroleo es si preciose a causa del substantias chemic que illos contine que il esserea logic de prohibir arder los pro obtener fortia motor. Nos prepara aperir le grande depositos de schistos petroleofere.

Nostre uso del importationes currente del lumine que le sol infunde super nos, es pietosemente inefficace. Le campos e silvas usa solmente un parve fraction del radiation que illos recipe. Sed nos non pote mesmo construir un fabrica si efficace como le folio verde.

Nos indige un tanto vigorose effortio de recerca super le energia pro le futuro como lo a que le germanos nos fortiava in le disveloppamento del energia atomic. Nos deberea consecrar a illo un milliardo de dollares e dece mille del melior cerebros. Nos debe:

## 8. Appendix 3 - sample texts

---

- A. Discoverir le secreto del folio verde (photosynthese) e refacer lo chimicamente e mechanicamente con efficacia real.
- B. Cercar plantas, sia algas sia alteres, que pote melio capturar le lumine solar pro alimentos, productos chimic, e materias de combustion.
- C. Reexplorar le fortia motor veniente del differentias de temperatura in le oceano, del fluxu e refluxu, del sufflo del ventos, e del calor directe del lumine solar. Risos del vangloriose exploitatores de nostre amplissime provision de energia non deberea discouragiar nos.
- D. Studiar le sol e le stellas per trovar nove directivas concernente le conversion de materia in energia, nam illo es lo que provide de combustibile iste textoPrincipals flammante.
- E. Trovar elementos, ultra uranium e thorium, que contine usabile energia nucleari.

## 8.5. Le administration de recercas scientific

### L Sprague de Camp

*Traducte del texto original anglese (Astounding Science Fiction, julio 1951, pp. 128 et seq.) per Hugh E. Blair, ilustrante le uso del ortografia regularizat, del participios passat iregular, e del distinction de infinitivos in -er e -ere. Vide [§15](#), [§57](#), [§79](#), [§116](#), [§134](#), [§148](#).*

Scientistas varia justo como nos alteros. Ha sapientes e fatuos, sobrios e dissipatos, solitarios e gregarios, corteses e inciviles, puritanos e licentiosos, industriosos e pigros, et cetera. Como genere iles exhibi certe tendentias. Per exemplo, iles son totos de alte intelligentia. Le scientista pote essere stupide re certe cosas, ma il debe haver le basic potentia mental que es requisit pro devenir scientista; il non pote essere moron in le stricte senso psicometric.

Essente plus intelligente que le homines medie, forsan le scientistas tende anque a essere plus judiciose, ma isto non impedi alcunos inter iles de cadere in difficultates amorose, de essere decepte per obvie mistificationes e fraudes, o de imbraciar doctrinas pseudoscientific.

Le psicologo Sheldon pensa que le scientistas tende verso su tipo ectomorfic in lor fisico e cerebrotonic in lor temperamento. De lo que io ha viste de scientistas io so inclinat a concurere. Le ectomorfo es le homine magre, e le cerebrotonico es le individualista pensative, introvertite, nervose, quiet, e maestro de se mesme. Il ama laborar solo, prefere ideas a homines, e invetera ben, deveniente arugat e coriacee in vice de grasse de pancia e de gena.

De tot le homines, le scientistas son, in general, le individualistas le plus obstinat e refractori del mundo, comunmente inofensive ma capace de perseguere lor fines con le intensitat fanatic de un mania. Si non era assi, iles non vel jamais submitere se al longe e intense processo educational requisit a facere un scientista.

Ubi e como labora le scientistas? Un minoritat bastante parve - geologos, meteorologos, biologos, archeologos, et cetera - va via in expeditiones inter le quales iles labora in lor officios o instrue in scolas e universitates. Le resto labora in laboratorios governamental o privat. Le privates son los de companias manufacturari, de universitates, e de altere institutiones como museos e centros medical, e de alcun individuos ben proviste.

Laboratorios son raramente tan net e lucente como ilos apare in le cinemas re scientistas nobile. In su vice ilos son incombrat de pecias de cablo electric, de tubaje e vitraje, de suportos, de lunches de mecanicos e vetule magazines tecnic, de cinerieras facte de parafernales scientific disjectat, et cetera.

In multe sortas de labor ha un rude corelation inter le general habitos de labor de un homine - netitat, agradabilitat, punctualitat, et cetera - e le merito de su labor. Ma al scientistas isto non se aplica. Alcun bonissime scientistas son personas disordinat qui seque nul horario regular e qui grunni a totos. Es necessari un bon administrator pro ben evaluar le merito del homines sub il e pro transvider tal cosas superficial como lor disnetitat de aparentia o lor character desagradabile.

Pois, como obtener un bon administrator? Question difficilissime! Si vostre scientista le plus competente es anque un bon administrator, vos es fortunat e non ha problema. Ma isto es infrequente, proque le qualitates que face le melior scientista son nulmente los del melior administrator.

Iste contradictiones e difficultates son minus evidente in laboratorios que face tests routinari de ingenieria. In tal organizationes un ingeniero manea un trupa de tecnicos sin grados in plus o minus le mesme maniera in que il vel manear un departamento de production.

Ma tan tosto que on admite alcun originalitat o pensamento, on ha "recerca," e quanto plus recerca on ha, quanto plus "pur" le scientia es, tanto plus grande son le difficultates administrative. Ilos anque augmenta con le grandor del organization, atingente un maximo in le laboratorios del governmento e in los del grande companias privat.

Alcun veces, como io ha dicte, un bon scientista es anque un bon administrator, e in tal casos non existe problema. Ma altere veces on ha de concocere un schema special pro altiar tal o tal scientista (in paga e respectu) del rango subalterne al position superior que il merita sin actualmente ponere le in carga de un departamento. On le apela "consultante" o "ingeniero senior" o tal, e on le recompensa per dar le minus labor a papiro e plus libertate, in vice del reverso, le qual es le lot normal del executivo.

Ecce un exemplo del absurditates inherente in iste paradoxo: Durante le secunde Guerra Mundial haveva un fisico de fama mundial qui laborava al Projecto Manhattan a Los Alamos. Pro dar le un rango comensurat con su position in le campo scientific, le governmento del Statos Unit haveva de emplear le a un de su ratas le plus alte, le qual significava que quando le carta del organization era planat iste homine era le tertio in comando a Los Alamos. Ordinarimente isto significava nulo; le primo e le secundo maneava toto e permetteva al tertio seder in su sede a cerebrar. Ma veniva le tempore quando le primo e le secundo era ambos via al mesme tempore, e nostre heroe se trovava director non solo in teoria ma in practica. Un mantenitor entrava pro vider le director e dava al fisico un longe reporto re alcun hasardo periculose de incendio que il haveva trovat, le qual debeva essere adjustat imediatmente. Quando le mantenitor haveva finit, le fisico le regardava vago e diceva: "Ma isto non ha cosa a facere con fisica!" E allora il tornava in alto le oculos e se retirava de nove al Nirvana del plus alte fisica mathematic.

Le lot del administrator scientific es bastante exigente. Il ha de ir tan lontan como possibile in dar a su scientistas le optime conditiones de labor, ma il pote raramente ir bastante lontan pro lor gusto. Iles vole laboratorios stockat con equipamento ilimitat que iles pote simplemente prendere del stockario sin mesmo signar un recepta. Sub tal conditiones le administrator non vel saper lo que ocure, e si le officio central veniva querere que faceva su genios pro justificar su expensa, il vel haver grande difficultat a replicar.

Al altere latere le administrator ha de guardar se contra le superorganization, un morbo que floresce in grande organizationes in general, e in departamentos governamental in particular. Ha personas qui ama cel parve cartas con lor lineas e cassas como un porco ama le fango. Si on les da un mano libere iles va elaborar tante relationes interserat, tante lineas de autoritat, e tante committees; iles va ordinar tante meetings e consultationes e memoranda in octuplicato que le organization es paralisat per mer complexitat.

Le superorganization es specialmente perniciose pro scientistas, qui generalmente ama laborar solo e qui ha in un certe grado devenit scientistas a fin de poter facere lo.

Uno qui tenta manear homines o activitates pro alcun proposito debe expectar difficultates, ma isto non es un ration adequat pro abandonar un projecto meritose. Pro succeder, un expedition o un laboratorio non debe essere un que non ha difficultates de personalitates o de administration ma un que atinge su objectives in despecto de illos.



## 9. Alphabetical Index

a

used to express dative functions [§26](#), [§76](#); used with infinitive [§84f](#).

absolute superlative

[§36](#)

accent

no accent marks used [§1](#); see also DIACRITICAL SIGNS and STRESS

accusative

see [§71f](#).

adjective

[§31](#)- [§42](#); possessive [§64f](#); demonstrative [§78f](#); participial [§93](#)- [§97](#); postverbal [§97](#); numeral [§118](#)- [§127](#); used as pronoun or noun [§38](#)- [§41](#), also [§64](#), [§78](#); comparison [§34](#)- [§38](#); position [§33](#); no inflection or agreement [§32](#); proper nouns with adjectival functions [§29](#); nouns used as adjectives in English [§28](#); derivatives from adjectives [§45](#)- [§47](#), [§140](#)- [§144](#); derivation of adjectives [§139](#), [§142](#), also [§152](#), [§154](#), and see COMPOUNDING

adverb

[§43](#)- [§53](#); primary [§44](#), [§47](#); derived [§45](#)- [§47](#); adverbial numerals [§130](#); adverbial phrases [§48](#); position [§52f](#).; comparison [§50](#); see also GRAMMATICAL WORDS

affixes

see also COMPOUNDING, DERIVATION, WORD BUILDING, TERMINATIONS, NATURAL GENDER, PREFIXES, SUFFIXES.

List of affixes and affixlike compounding elements: a- [§158](#), [§140](#); -abile [§152f](#)., [§145](#)-[§147](#); ad- [§157](#); -ada [§138](#), [§152](#), [§154](#), [§137](#), [§145](#)-[§147](#); aero- [§161](#); -age [§7](#), [§138](#), [§152](#), [§154](#), [§15](#), [§137](#), [§145](#)-[§147](#); -al [§139](#); -alia [§138](#), [§137](#); -amento [§152](#), [§154](#), [§145](#)-[§147](#); amphi- [§158](#); -an [§139](#), [§138](#); -ana [§138](#), [§158](#); -ano [§138](#), [§139](#); -anta [§118](#); ante- [§157](#); -ante [§93](#), [§152f](#)., [§41](#), [§141](#), [§145](#)-[§147](#); anti- [§157](#); -antia [§93](#), [§152](#), [§154](#), [§141](#), [§145](#)-[§147](#); ape- [§158](#); -ar (adj) [§139](#); -ar (v) [§140](#) [§154](#); archi- [§161](#); -ari [§139](#), [§138](#); -aria [§138](#); -ario [§138](#), [§139](#); -astra, -astro [§138](#), [§137](#); -ata [§138](#), [§137](#); -ate [§95](#), [§139](#), [§152f](#)., [§149f](#).; -ation [§152](#), [§154](#), [§145](#), [§149](#); -ative [§152](#), [§153](#), [§149](#); -ato [§138](#); -ator [§152](#), [§149](#); -atori [§152f](#)., [§149](#); -atorio [§152](#), [§149](#); -atrice [§152](#); -atura [§152](#), [§154](#), [§149](#); auto- [§157](#); bi- [§128](#); cata- [§158](#); centi- [§128](#); circum- [§157](#), [§158](#); co- [§157](#); con- [§157](#), [§158](#); contra- [§157](#); deca-, deci-, di- [§128](#); dia- [§158](#); dis- [§157](#); dodeca- [§128](#); dys- [§158](#); -e [§97](#), [§152f](#)., [§145](#), [§149](#); ecto- [§158](#); electro- [§161](#); en- [§158](#), [§157](#); -ena [§129](#); endo- [§158](#); -ente [§93](#), [§152f](#)., [§41](#), [§141](#), [§145](#)-[§147](#); -entia [§93](#), [§152](#), [§154](#), [§141](#), [§145](#)-[§147](#); ento- [§158](#); epi- [§158](#); equi- [§161](#); -er [§139](#); -era [§138](#); -eria [§138](#), [§152](#), [§154](#), [§10](#), [§137](#), [§145](#)-[§147](#); -ero [§138](#), [§137](#), [§139](#); -esc [§139](#), [§137](#); -ese [§138f](#)., [§41](#), [§137](#); -esime [§125](#), [§10](#); -essa [§138](#), [§141](#), [§137](#), [§152](#); -eto [§138](#); -etta [§138](#), [§137](#); -ette [§142](#), [§137](#); -etto [§138](#), [§137](#); ex- [§157](#); exo- [§158](#); extra- [§157](#), [§158](#); extro-, gran- [§157](#); hecto-, hemi-, hepta- [§128](#); hetero- [§161](#); hexa- [§128](#); homeo-, homo-, hydro- [§161](#); hyper-, hypo- [§158](#); -ia ('-ia) [§138](#), [§141](#), [§152](#); -ia ('-ia) [§138](#), [§141](#), [§10](#); -ial [§139](#); -ian [§139](#), [§138](#); -iana [§138](#); -iano [§138](#), [§139](#); -iardo [§118](#); -ibile [§150](#), [§152f](#)., [§145](#)-[§147](#); -ic [§10](#),

## 9. Alphabetical Index

---

[§139](#), [§138](#); -ica [§10](#), [§138](#); -icida, -icidio [§161](#); -ico [§10](#), [§138](#); -icole [§164](#); -iente [§93](#), [§152f.](#), [§41](#), [§141](#), [§145- §147](#); -ientia [§93](#), [§152](#), [§154](#), [§141](#), [§145- §147](#); -ier [§139](#); -iera [§138](#), [§137](#); -iero [§138](#), [§137](#), [§139](#); -ifere [§139](#), [§10](#); -ific [§10](#), [§139](#), [§140](#); -ificar [§140](#), [§137](#); -iforme [§164](#); -il [§138](#), [§41](#); -ilingue [§164](#); -illion [§118](#); -iloque [§164](#); -imento [§152](#), [§154](#), [§145- §147](#); -in [§139](#); in- [§157](#), [§140](#), [§158](#); -ina [§138f.](#); -ino [§139](#); inter-, intra-, intro- [§157](#); -ion [§152](#), [§154](#), [§139](#), [§145](#), [§148f.](#); -iose [§139](#); -ipare, -ipede [§164](#); -isar [§140](#), [§15](#), [§138](#); -ismo [§138](#), [§141](#), [§140](#); iso- [§161](#); -isone [§164](#); -issime [§36](#), [§10](#), [§137](#), [§142](#); -issimo [§47](#), [§10](#), [§137](#); -ista [§138f.](#), [§141f.](#), [§140](#); -ita [§138](#); -itate [§141](#); -ite (n) [§138](#); -ite (adj) [§95](#), [§152f.](#), [§148f.](#); -ition [§152](#), [§154](#), [§145](#), [§149](#); -itis [§138](#); -itive [§152](#), [§149](#); -itor [§152](#), [§149](#); -itori [§152f.](#), [§149](#); -itorio [§152](#), [§149](#); -itricce [§152](#); -itude [§141](#); -itura [§152](#), [§154](#), [§149](#); -ive [§152f.](#), [§145](#), [§148f.](#); -ivome [§164](#); kilo- [§128](#); macro- [§161](#); medie- [§126](#); -mente [§45](#), [§130](#); meta- [§158](#); micro- [§161](#); milli- [§128](#); mis- [§157](#), [§158](#); mono-, multi-, myria- [§128](#); neo- [§161](#); non- [§157](#); -o (adv) [§47](#), [§130](#); octa- [§128](#); -ographia, -ographo [§161](#); -oide [§138f.](#); -ologia [§161](#); -ologo [§161](#), [§10](#); -omana, -omane, -omania, -omano [§161](#); -ometro, omni- [§161](#); -ophila, -ophile, -ophilia, ophilo, -ophoba, -ophobe, -ophobia, -ophobo [§161](#); -or [§152](#), [§145](#), [§148f.](#); -ori [§152f.](#), [§145](#), [§148f.](#); -erio [§152](#), [§145](#), [§148](#); -oscopia, -oscopic, -oscopio, -oscopo [§161](#); -ose [§139](#); -osis [§138](#), [§139](#); -otic [§139](#), [§138](#); paleo- [§161](#); pan- [§161](#); para- [§158](#); penta- [§128](#); per- [§157](#); peri- [§158](#); photo- [§161](#); pluri- [§128](#); poly- [§128](#); post-, pre-, pro- [§157](#); proto-, pseudo- [§161](#); quadri- [§128](#); quasi-, radio- [§161](#); re-, retro- [§157](#); -rice [§152](#); semi-, sesqui- [§128](#); sub-, super- [§157](#), [§158](#); syn- [§158](#); tele- [§161](#); tetra- [§128](#); trans- [§157](#), [§158](#); tri- [§128](#); ultra- [§157](#), [§158](#); uni- [§128](#); -ura [§152](#), [§154](#), [§145](#), [§148f.](#); vice- [§157](#)

### agreement

no agreement of adjectives [§32](#); in appositives [§30](#); in third-person personal pronouns [§58](#), [§61](#)

### alphabet

[§1](#)

### apposition

[§30](#)

### article

[§17- §21](#); in pronominal use [§21](#); definite [§17](#), [§18](#), [§21](#); indefinite [§19- §21](#)

### auxiliary verbs

in past compound tenses [§105](#); in future and conditional [§108](#); in the passive [§112](#)

### capitalization

[§14](#)

### case forms

see DECLENSION

### collateral variant of Interlingua

spelling [§15](#); special forms [§57](#), [§79](#), [§116](#), [§134](#); participial adjectives [§97](#); verbs in -ere [§148](#);

### comparison

of adjectives [§34- §38](#); of adverbs [§50](#); irregular forms [§37](#)

### compounding

[§155- §162](#); by means of prefixes [§156- §158](#); by means of compounding forms [§159- §162](#); with multiplicative numerals [§128](#); in conjunction with derivation [§163f.](#), see also [§140](#)

### compound tenses



- see PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, FUTURE, CONDITIONAL; position of pronoun with compound tenses [§70](#)
- conditional  
[§107f.](#); contrary-to-fact condition [§103](#)
- conjugation  
 see VERB; no personal inflection [§98](#); table of conjugation [§115](#)
- conjunctions  
[§165](#); conjunctive phrases [§166](#); punctuation in conjunctive clauses [§16](#); see also GRAMMATICAL WORDS
- contrary-to-fact condition  
[§103](#)
- dates  
[§132](#)
- dative  
 expressed by preposition [§26](#), [§76](#); see also [§71f.](#)
- de  
 used to express genitive functions [§26](#), [§76](#); used with infinitive [§84](#), [§89](#)
- declension  
 no case forms of nouns [§26](#); no case forms of adjectives [§32](#); case forms of pronouns [§54](#), [§62f.](#)
- definite article  
[§17f.](#), [§21](#); in pronominal use [§21](#)
- demonstrative adjectives and pronouns  
[§78- §79](#)
- derivation  
[§135- §154](#); from nouns [§138- §140](#); from adjectives [§45- §47](#), [§140- §144](#); from verbs [§145- §154](#); of nouns [§138](#), [§141](#), also [§152](#), [§154](#); of adjectives [§139](#), [§142](#), also [§152](#), [§154](#); of adverbs [§45- §47](#); of verbs [§140](#), [§144](#), and see COMPOUNDING
- diacritical signs  
 not used in Interlingua words [§1](#); in "guest words" [§9](#)
- diphthongs  
[§5](#)
- double consonants  
[§6](#); elimination in collateral orthography [§15a](#)
- double-stem verbs  
[§148](#)
- duration of sound  
[§12](#)
- endings  
 see TERMINATIONS
- English, distinctive traits  
 obscured final vowels [§3](#); nouns used as adjectives [§28](#); compounding by juxtaposition [§159](#); omission of relative pronoun [§76](#); gerund [§83](#); 'to' before infinitive [§84](#); accusative with infinitive [§90](#); progressive tense forms [§80](#), [§94](#)
- esser  
 passive auxiliary [§112f.](#); optional irregular forms [§101](#), [§104](#)
- facere  
 'to cause (to do)' and 'to cause (to be done)' [§70](#), [§88](#)

## 9. Alphabetical Index

---

familiar form of address

[§57](#)

female, feminine

see NATURAL GENDER

foreign words

see "GUEST WORDS"

future tense

[§107f.](#)

gender

see GRAMMATICAL GENDER and NATURAL GENDER

genitive

expressed by preposition [§26](#), [§76](#); of relative pronoun [§76](#)

grammatical gender

no grammatical gender in Interlingua [§23](#), but see NATURAL GENDER

grammatical subject

[§59](#)

grammatical words

[§134](#) "guest words" [§9](#); in collateral variant [§15](#); plural [§25](#)

haber

auxiliary functions [§105f.](#); optional irregular present [§101](#)

imperative

[§110f.](#); infinitive used as imperative [§91](#)

indefinite article

[§19](#)- [§21](#); in pronominal use [§21](#)

indefinite personal pronoun

[§61](#)

infinitive

[§81](#)- [§92](#); terminations [§82](#); use of prepositions with infinitive [§84](#)- [§89](#); position in relation to pronoun [§69](#); in questions [§92](#); for general topics, see VERB

interrogative particle

[§116](#); followed by infinitive [§92](#)

intonation

[§12](#)

irregular forms

of plurals in "guest words" [§25](#); of derived adverbs [§47](#), [§49](#); of comparison [§37](#); of verb stems [§146](#), [§148f.](#), [§152](#)

male, masculine

see NATURAL GENDER

natural gender

in pronominal use of articles [§21](#); in nouns [§24](#); in appositives [§30](#); see also PERSONAL PRONOUNS and DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES; substitute for gender in third-person possessives [§65](#)

neuter

see NATURAL GENDER

nominative

see SUBJECT CASE

noun

[§22](#)- [§30](#); see also SURSTANTIVE and PROPER NOUNS; adjectives used as nouns

- [§38- §41](#); English nouns with adjectival functions [§28](#); derivatives from nouns [§138- §140](#); derivation of nouns [§138- §141](#), also [§152](#), [§154](#), and see COMPOUNDING
- numerals  
[§118- §133](#); adverbial [§130](#); cardinal [§118- §124](#); ordinal [§125](#); collective [§129](#); decimal [§123](#); fractional [§126](#); multiplicative [§127](#); multiplicative compounds [§128](#)
- optative  
[§111](#)
- orthographic change  
 in derivation [§137](#); in plural formations [§25](#)
- orthography  
 see SPELLING
- participle  
 see PRESENT PARTICIPILE and PAST PARTICIPLE
- parts of speech  
[§17- §133](#); see NOUN, ADJECTIVEj etc.
- passive  
[§112- §114](#); expressed in reflexive constructions [§68](#); passive infinitive [§88](#)
- past participle  
[§95- §97](#); position in relation to pronoun [§69](#)
- past tense  
[§102- §104](#); optional irregular form of easer [§104](#)
- perfect tense  
[§105f.](#)
- personal pronoun  
[§54- §63](#), [§69- §73](#); tabular presentation [§54](#); third-person gender and agreement [§58](#), [§61](#); indefinite [§60](#); case forms [§63](#); position [§69- §71](#), [§73](#); omission of [§59](#)
- phrases  
 adverbial [§48](#); prepositional and conjunctional [§166](#)
- pluperfect tense  
[§105f.](#)
- plural  
 of nouns [§25](#), [§29](#); of adjectives used as pronouns or nouns [§39](#); of pronouns [§61](#); optional plural of present tense of esser [§101](#)
- polite form of address  
[§57](#)
- possessive  
 see GENITIVE
- possessive adjectives  
[§64](#), [§65](#); tabular presentation [§54](#)
- prefixes  
[§155- §158](#), also [§161a](#), [§164](#); see AFFIXES for complete list
- prepositions  
[§165- §167](#); used to express case functions [§26](#), [§76](#); after infinitives [§84- §86](#), [§89](#); prepositional phrases [§166](#); double prepositions [§167](#); see also GRAMMATICAL WORDS
- present participle  
[§93f.](#); position in relation to pronouns [§69](#)
- present tense

## 9. Alphabetical Index

---

- [§99- §101](#); optional irregular forms [§101](#)
- pronouns
  - [§54- §79](#); see DEMONSTRATIVE, PERSONAL, etc.; position in relation to verb [§53](#);  
adjectives used pronominally [§38f.](#), also [§64](#), [§78](#)
- pronunciation
  - [§1- §12](#)
- proper nouns
  - capitalization of [§14](#); with adjectival functions [§29](#)
- punctuation
  - [§16](#), [§52](#)
- question
  - [§116](#); use of infinitive in [§92](#)
- reflexive pronoun
  - forms [§66](#); use [§67f.](#); position [§69- §71](#), [§73](#)
- relative pronouns
  - [§74- §77](#); indefinite [§21](#); punctuation in relative clauses [§16](#)
- sequence of tenses
  - [§117](#)
- spelling
  - [§1- §9](#); collateral [§15](#); changes in derivation [§137](#)
- stress
  - not indicated by accent mark [§1](#); rules [§10f.](#); in future tense [§107](#)
- subject
  - see GRAMMATICAL SUBJECT
- subject case
  - of personal pronouns [§54- §61](#), [§63](#); of relative pronouns [§76](#)
- subjunctive
  - not expressed [§80](#); exceptional form *sia* [§111](#)
- substantive
  - see also NOUN; substantivization of adjectives [§38- §41](#), of demonstratives [§78](#), of  
fractional numerals [§126](#), of ordinal numerals [§125](#), of infinitive [§83](#)
- suffixes
  - postsubstantival [§138- §140](#); postadjectival [§141- §142](#), also [§45](#); postverbal [§145- §154](#); see also [§161b](#), [§164](#) and AFFIXES for complete list
- superlative
  - see COMPARISON and ABSOLUTE SUPERLATIVE
- syllabification
  - [§13](#)
- tables and surveys
  - pronunciation [§4](#); comparison of adjectives [§37](#); adjectives not substantivized in o/a  
[§41](#); personal pronouns [§54](#), [§68](#); possessive adjectives [§54](#); passive tense forms [§112](#);  
conjugation [§115](#); numerals [§116](#); numeral compounding forms [§128](#); grammatical  
words [§134](#); suffixes [§138- §154](#), [§161b](#), [§164](#); prefixes [§157- §158](#), [§161a](#);
- tenses
  - see PRESENT, PAST, etc.
- terminations
  - of nouns [§22](#); of adjectives [§31](#), [§136](#), [§164](#); of adverbs [§47](#); of demonstratives [§78](#); of  
verbs [§81](#), [§146](#); foreign [§136](#); in collateral orthography [§15h](#); in derivation [§136](#);

- expressing natural gender [§39-](#) [§41](#), [§58](#), [§78](#)
- time of day  
[§133](#)
- verb  
[§80-](#) [§117](#); see specific topics, tenses, modes, etc.; auxiliary [§101](#), [§104f.](#), [§108](#), [§112f.](#);  
double-stem [§146-](#) [§150](#), also [§152](#); derivatives from verbs [§145-](#) [§154](#), also [§83](#);  
derivation of verbs [§140](#), [§144](#), and see COMPOUNDING.
- word building  
[§135-](#) [§166](#); see also DERIVATION
- word order  
position of adjective [§33](#); position of adverb [§52f.](#); position of pronouns [§69-](#) [§71](#), [§73](#),  
[§88](#); in questions [§116](#)

